



EASYDEUTSCH



ENGLISH

sehr
einfach!

GERMAN GRAMMAR

easily

EXPLAINED

Simple and understandable

Reference book for German grammar A1 - B2
German as a foreign language

JAN RICHTER

German as a Second Language

A German Grammar Reference Book



Author: Jan Richter

EASYDEUTSCH

GERMAN GRAMMAR EXPLAINED EASILY

Simple explanations written from the perspective of the learner



EASYDEUTSCH

www.easy-deutsch.com

Copyright © by Jan Richter – EasyDeutsch

Contact: lehrer@easy-deutsch.de

EasyDeutsch LLC

2880W Oakland Park Blvd, Suite 225C

Oakland Park, FL. US FL 33311

Table of Content

FORWARD	27
IMPORTANT INFORMATION:.....	30
Parts of Speech.....	30
MEANINGS OF THE COLORS AND MARKINGS:.....	31
Cases	31
Point of Emphasis	31
HOW TO WORK WITH THIS EBOOK?	32
ADJECTIVES L1 – What is an Adjective?.....	34
What is an Adjective?	35
Do I have to decline Adjectives?	35
More Examples	36
Adjective: “groß”	36
Task	36
ADJECTIVES L2 – ADJECTIVE DECLENSION	37
ADJECTIVES L2.1 – ADJECTIVE DECLENSION AFTER DEFINITE ARTICLES	38
Adjective Endings after Definite Articles	39
Examples	39
Definite Article Words.....	39
Summary.....	40
ADJECTIVES L2.2 – ADJECTIVE DECLENSION AFTER INDEFINITE ARTICLES	41
Adjective Endings after Indefinite Articles	42
Adjective Endings after Possessive Articles	42
Adjective Endings after “kein”	43
Examples	43
Summary.....	43
ADJECTIVES L2.3 – ADJ. DECLENSION WITHOUT ARTICLES	44
Adjective Endings without Articles.....	45
Examples	45
Summary.....	46
Task	46

ADJECTIVES L2.4 – IRREGULARITIES IN ADJECTIVE DECLENSION	47
ADJECTIVES L2.5 – ADJ. DECLENSION: A STEP-BY-STEP GUIDE	48
Summary of General Rules	48
ADJECTIVES L3 – COMPARISONS OF ADJECTIVES	50
Basic Info	50
ADJECTIVES L3.1 – THE COMPARATIVE FORM	51
Use of Comparative	51
Construction	51
Irregularities	51
ADJECTIVES L3.2 – THE SUPERLATIVE FORM	52
USE OF THE SUPERLATIVE	52
CONSTRUCTION	52
IRREGULARITIES	52
ADJECTIVES L3.3 – IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES AND DECLENSION	53
IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES	53
DECLENSION	53
ADJECTIVES L3.4 – ANOTHER WAY TO COMPARE	54
ADJECTIVES L4 – PARTICIPLES AS ADJECTIVES	55
The Different Participles	56
The Present Participle (Partizip 1) as Adjective	56
The Past Participle (Partizip 2) as an Adjective	57
Tip for easy Understanding	57
ADJECTIVES L5 – ADJECTIVES AS NOUNS	58
General Info	59
Comparison	59
Common Examples	60
Participles as Nouns	60
Summary	61
ADJECTIVES L6 – CREATING ADJECTIVES	62
General Info	63
Adjectives from Adjectives	63
Adjectives from Verbs	63

Adjectives from Nouns	64
Summary.....	65
ADVERBS L1 – WHAT ARE ADVERBS?	66
What are Adverbs?	67
Difference between Adverbs and Adjectives	67
Examples	67
Task	68
ADVERBS L2 – TEMPORAL ADVERBS	69
General Info	70
Examples: “Wann?”	70
Examples: “Ab wann?”	70
Examples: “Bis wann?”	71
Examples: “Seit wann?”	71
Examples: “Wie lange?”	71
Examples: “Wie oft?”	72
Summary.....	72
ADVERBS L3 – LOCATIVE ADVERBS	73
General Info	74
Examples: “Wo?”	74
Examples: “Wohin?/Woher?”	74
Preposition or Adverb.....	75
The difference between using a Preposition and an Adverb?	75
ADVERBS L3 EXTRA – HIN & HER	76
General Info	77
The Two Versions.....	77
Combined with other Adverbs	77
Combined with Verbs	78
Combined with a Preposition and a Verb	78
ADVERBS L4 – CONJUNCTIVE ADVERBS.....	79
What are Conjunctive Adverbs?	80
Conjunctive Adverbs vs. Conjunctions	80

The different Conjunctive Adverbs.....	81
Summary.....	81
ADVERBS L5 – PARTICLES	82
What are Particles?	83
Characteristics of Particles	83
Different types of Particles:	83
Intensifying Particles (Gradpartikel)	83
Focus Particles (Fokuspartikel)	84
Negating Particles (Negationspartikel)	84
Conversational Particles (Gesprächspartikel)	84
Interjections (Ausdruckspartikel)	84
Onomatopoeia (Lautmalende Partikel)	85
Summary.....	85
Task	85
ADVERBS L6 – MODAL PARTICLES (MODALPARTIKEL)	86
What are Modal Particles?	87
Use of “vielleicht”	87
Use of “ja”	87
Use of “eigentlich”	87
Use of “denn”	88
Use of “dich”	88
Use of “mal”	88
Use of “eben/halt”	88
Use of “wohl”	89
Use of “schon” & “ruhig”	89
Use of “bloß” & “nur”	89
Task	89
ARTICLES L1 – WHAT ARE ARTICLES?	90
Articles in English.....	91
Where do we live find Articles?.....	91
What information does the Article contain?	91

Different Types of Articles.....	91
Task	92
ARTICLES L2 – DEFINITE ARTICLES.....	93
Examples and Comparison	94
The Use of Definite Articles.....	94
Declension – Definite Articles in all Cases	94
Summary.....	95
ARTICLES L3 – INDEFINITE ARTICLES	96
Examples and Comparison	97
The Use of Indefinite Articles.....	97
Declension – Indefinite Articles in all Cases	97
Summary.....	97
Task	98
ARTICLES L4 – THE NEGATIVE ARTICLE: "KEIN"	99
What is the Negative Article “kein”?	100
The Use of the Negative Article “kein”	100
Declension – “kein” in all Cases	100
Summary.....	100
Task	101
ARTICLES L5 – THE ZERO ARTICLE	102
What is the Zero Article?	103
The Use of the Zero Article	103
Advice / Task.....	105
ARTICLES L6 – THE POSSESSIVE ARTICLES	106
What is the possessive Article?	107
The Different Forms of the Possessive Articles	107
Declension of Possessive Articles	107
Analysis of an Example:	108
More Examples	108
ARTICLES L7 – DECLENSION (IS SO EASY) GUIDE.....	109
NOUNS – L1: WHAT ARE NOUNS?	112

Nouns – Definition	113
Nouns – Characteristics	113
Task	113
NOUNS – L2: GERMAN GENDER	114
How many Genders do we use in German?	115
Examples	115
How do we determine the Gender?	115
Masculine Nouns	116
Feminine Nouns	117
Neuter Nouns	118
How do Germans determine the Gender?	118
Compound Nouns.....	119
Gender of Plural Nouns	119
Too many rules for you?	119
Task	119
NOUNS - L3: ARTICLE GUIDE	120
Do you have Problems with the German Articles?	121
The Article Guide	122
Follow this Plan	122
NOUNS – L4: PLURAL NOUNS IN GERMAN	123
Plural – Introduction.....	124
Plural with “-N/-EN”	124
Plural with “-E”	125
Plural with “-R/-ER”	125
Plural with “-S”	126
Plural without an Ending	126
Plural of Foreign Words.....	127
No Plural form Possible	127
No Singular form Possible	127
Summary.....	128
NOUNS – L5: COMPOUND NOUNS	129

When do we use Compound Nouns?	130
Noun + Noun	130
Verb + Noun	131
Adjective / Adverb + Noun	131
Which Gender and Plural Form?	131
NOUNS – L6: GERMAN CASES	132
What are Cases?	133
How many Cases are there in German?	133
What do the Cases represent?	133
Cases in English	134
What can get a Case?	134
How to determine the Case?	134
Examples	135
Task	135
NOUNS – L6.1: THE NOMINATIVE CASE	136
What is the Nominative Case?	137
Examples	137
Nominative – Declension	137
Use of the Nominative Case	137
Summary	138
NOUNS – L6.2: THE ACCUSATIVE CASE	139
What is the Accusative Case?	140
Examples	140
Accusative – Declension	140
Use of the Accusative Case	140
Task	142
NOUNS – L6.3: THE DATIVE CASE	143
What is the Dative Case?	144
Examples	144
Dative – Declension	144
Special Characteristics	145

Use of the Dative Case	145
Task	147
NOUNS – L6.4: THE GENITIVE CASE.....	148
What is the Genitive Case?	149
The Genitive Case – Examples	149
Declension in the Genitive Case	149
Special Characteristics of the Genitive Case.....	149
Use of the Genitive Case	150
Good News for German Students:	152
NOUNS L6.5 – GUIDE TO THE CORRECT CASE.....	153
Basics	153
NOUNS L7 – N-DECLENSION.....	156
What does N-Declension mean?.....	157
When do we use N-Declension?.....	157
Step by Step: N-Declension – Yes? or No?.....	158
Summary.....	159
Exceptions of N-Declension.....	159
PREPOSITIONS L1 – PREPOSITIONS IN GENERAL	160
Definition and Use	161
Types of Prepositions	161
Prepositions and Cases	162
Prepositions with Articles	162
Examples	162
Task	162
PREPOSITIONS L2 – LOCAL PREPOSITIONS	163
PREPOSITIONS L2.1 – PREPOSITIONS ANSWERING "WO?"	164
General Info	165
The Prepositions	165
Summary.....	165
Task	165
PREPOSITIONS L2.2 – PREPOSITIONS ANSWERING "WOHER?".....	166

General Info	167
The Preposition "aus"	167
The Preposition "von"	167
Summary.....	168
PREPOSITIONS L2.3 – PREPOSITIONS ANSWERING "WOHIN?"	169
General Info	170
Two-Case Prepositions	170
"in" vs. "zu"	171
"zu" vs. "nach"	172
Summary.....	172
PREPOSITIONS L2.4 MORE LOCAL PREPOSITIONS.....	173
The Prepositions "DURCH"	174
The Prepositions "UM...HERUM"	174
The Prepositions "GEGENÜBER"	174
PREPOSITIONS L3 – TEMPORAL PREPOSITIONS.....	175
General Info	176
Temporal Prepositions with Accusative.....	176
Temporal Prepositions with Dative	176
Temporal Prepositions with Genitive.....	177
Summary.....	177
Task	177
PRONOUNS L1 – WHAT ARE PRONOUNS?	178
Definition	179
Pronouns in English	179
Different Types of Pronouns	179
Do you have to decline the Pronouns?	180
Task	180
PRONOUNS L2 – PERSONAL PRONOUNS.....	181
What are Personal Pronouns?	182
What information do personal Pronouns have?	182
The Different Forms	182

Use of the Different personal Pronouns	183
Summary.....	183
PRONOUNS L3 – PERSONAL PRONOUNS IN ALL CASES	184
Comparison to English	184
The Different Forms	184
Task	184
PRONOUNS L4 – REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS	185
What are Reflexive Pronouns?	186
How to form Reflexive Pronouns	186
Use of Reflexive Pronouns	186
Summary.....	187
PRONOUNS L5 – POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.....	188
What are Possessive Pronouns?	189
Possessive Articles & Possessive Pronouns	189
Construction.....	189
Declension.....	190
Usage.....	191
Summary.....	191
Task	191
PRONOUNS L6 – RELATIVE PRONOUNS	192
What are Relative Pronouns?	193
Relative Pronouns – Forms	193
How do you determine the Relative Pronoun?.....	194
Relative Pronouns with Prepositions.....	194
Summary.....	194
PRONOUNS L6 EXTRA – HOW TO DETERMINE THE CASE OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS	195
How do we easily determine the Case?.....	195
Examples	195
PRONOUNS L7 – DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS	196
What are Demonstrative Pronouns?	197
“DER, DIE, and DAS“ as Demonstrative Pronouns	197

Word Order	197
Demonstrative Pronoun: "DAS"	198
"DIESER" / "JENER"	198
Summary.....	199
PRONOUNS L8 – INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.....	200
What are Indefinite Pronouns?	201
Different Groups of Indefinite Pronouns	201
Indefinite Pronouns only for People	201
Indefinite Pronouns only for Things.....	202
Indefinite Pronouns for People and Things.....	204
PRONOUNS L9 – THE PRONOUN "ES"	206
General Info	207
The Use of "es"	207
Summary.....	210
SENTENCE STRUCTURE L1 - DIFFERENCE BETWEEN MAIN AND SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.....	211
main Clauses.....	211
Subordinate Clauses	211
Sentence Structure in General.....	211
SENTENCE STRUCTURE L2 – W-QUESTIONS	212
What are W-Question?	212
The Different Question Words.....	212
SENTENCE STRUCTURE L3 – YES/NO-QUESTIONS	213
What is a Yes / No – Question?	214
Word Order	215
Summary.....	215
SENTENCE STRUCTURE L4 – WHAT GOES IN P1?	216
Task	216
SENTENCE STRUCTURE L5 – WHERE IS THE SUBJECT?	217
Comparison to English	217
Example:.....	217
Task	217

SENTENCE STRUCTURE L6 – NEGATION	218
The three Different Negations	219
Use of "NEIN"	219
Use of "KEIN"	219
Use of "NICHT"	219
Words With A Negative Opposite	220
Summary.....	220
SENTENCE STRUCTURE L7 – POSITION OF "NICHT"	221
Negating an Adverb	222
Negating an Adjective	222
Negating a Pronoun.....	222
Negating a Proper Noun	222
Negative Adjuncts and Complements with Prepositions.....	222
Negating Nouns With Definite Articles or Possessive Pronouns	222
Negating Entire Sentences / Verbs.....	223
Summary.....	223
SENTENCE STRUCTURE L8 – SENTENCE BRACKETS	224
What are sentence brackets?	224
When do we use Sentence brackets?	224
Summary.....	225
Task	225
SENTENCE STRUCTURE L9 – SUBORDINATE CLAUSES	226
What are Subordinate Clauses?	227
Word Order	227
Which Conjugations trigger Subordinate Clauses?	229
Summary.....	229
Task	229
SENTENCE STRUCTURE L9.1 – "DASS"-CLAUSES	231
What are DASS – Clauses?	232
Verbs with DASS – Complements.....	232
"DASS" or "OB"?	233

Word order	233
Summary.....	234
SENTENCE STRUCTURE L9.2 – CAUSAL CLAUSES (WEIL, DA).....	235
What are Causal Clauses?	236
“WEIL“ or “DA“?	236
Special Characteristics	237
Summary.....	237
SENTENCE STRUCTURE L9.3 – CONCESSIVE CLAUSES (OBWOHL)	238
What are Concessive Clauses?	238
Comparison: Causal vs. Concessive	238
Summary.....	238
SENT. STRUCTURE L 9.4 – CONDITIONAL CLAUSES (WENN, FALLS).....	239
What are Conditional Clauses?	240
Difference between “WENN”, “FALLS” and “SO FERN”	240
In the Past.....	240
Word Order	241
Summary.....	242
SENT. STRUCTURE L 9.5 – FINAL CLAUSES (DAMIT, UM... ZU)	243
What are Final Clauses?	244
Final Clauses with “DAMIT”	244
Final Clauses with Infinitive Construction.....	244
Comparison “DAMIT“ / “UM...ZU...”	245
Characteristics	245
Summary.....	246
SENT. STRUCTURE L 9.6 – CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES (SO DASS).....	247
What are Consecutive Clauses?	248
Separable Version	248
Other Versions.....	248
Summary.....	249
SENT. STRUCTURE L 9.7 – MODAL CLAUSES (INDEM)	250
What are Modal Clauses?	251

“indem” and “dadurch dass...”	251
“ohne dass” and “ohne zu”	251
“anstatt dass” and “anstatt zu”	252
Summary.....	252
SENT. STRUCTURE L 9.8A – TEMPORAL CLAUSES	253
What are Temporal Clauses?	254
“seit / seitdem”	254
“bis”	254
“während”	254
“solange”	255
“nachdem”	255
“bevor” / “ehe”	256
“sobald” / “sowie”	256
Summary.....	257
SENT. STRUCTURE L 9.8B – TEMPORAL CLAUSES (WENN OR ALS?)	258
“wenn” or “als”?	259
Special Characteristics	260
Summary.....	260
SENTENCE STRUCTURE L9.9 – RELATIVE CLAUSES	261
What are Relative Clauses?	262
Relative Clauses with “der, die, das, welche”	262
Relative Clauses with “wo”	262
Relative Clauses with “was”	263
Summary.....	263
SENTENCE STRUCTURE L10.1 – COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS	264
What are Coordinating Conjunctions?	265
Connecting Main Clauses	265
Connecting Subordinate Clauses	265
Connecting Words, phrases, Elements.....	266
Overviews of Meanings	266
Summary.....	267

SENTENCE STRUCTURE L10.2 – SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS	268
What are Subordinating Conjunctions?	269
The Most Important Subordinating Conjunctions.....	269
Word Order	269
Summary.....	269
SENTENCE STRUCTURE L10.3 – MULTIPART CONJUNCTIONS	270
What are Multipart Conjunctions?	271
The different Multipart Conjunctions?	271
Word Order	272
Summary.....	272
SENTENCE STRUCTURE L10.4 – CONJUNCTIVE ADVERBS	273
What are Conjunctive Adverbs?	274
Conjunctive Adverbs vs. Conjunctions	274
The most important Conjunctive Adverbs	275
Summary.....	275
SENTENCE STRUCTURE L 11 – INFINITIVE CLAUSES	276
What are Infinitive Clauses?	277
When do we use ZU + Infinitive?	277
Verbs that require Infinitive Clauses.....	279
Verbs that we can use with Infinitive Clause	279
Infinitive Clauses with Separable Verbs.....	280
Verbs without Infinitive Clauses	280
Word Order & Commas	281
Summary.....	281
SENTENCE STRUCTURE L 12 – INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTIONS	282
What are Infinitive Constructions?	283
Clauses with “um... zu...”	283
Clauses with “ohne... zu...”	283
Clauses with “anstatt... zu...”	284
Summary.....	285
VERBS L1 – WHAT ARE VERBS?	286

Definition	287
Types of Verbs	287
There are three Verb Modes in German	287
Conjugation Basics	287
Summary	288
Task	288
VERBS L2 – THE VERB "SEIN" - TO BE	289
Conjugation of "sein"	289
Use of "sein"	289
Summary	290
Task	290
VERBS L3 – THE VERB "HABEN" - TO HAVE	291
Conjugation of "haben"	291
Use of "haben"	291
Summary	292
Task	292
VERBS L4 – STRONG VERBS	293
What are "STRONG Verbs"?	294
What do we have to change?	294
When do we change the Vowel?	294
What does the Vowel change to?	295
Summary	295
VERBS L 5.1 – MODAL VERBS	296
What are Modal Verbs?	296
Examples	296
Word Order	296
VERBS L 5.2 – THE DIFFERENT MODAL VERBS	297
Modal Verb "müssen"	298
Modal Verb "können"	299
Modal Verb "wollen/möchten"	300
Modal Verb "dürfen"	301

Modal Verb "sollen"	303
Summary: Modal Verbs.....	305
VERBS L6 – COMPOUND VERBS	306
What are Compound Verbs?.....	307
Separable Prefixes	307
Inseparable Prefixes	308
Separable and Inseparable	308
Conjugation	309
When do you have to Separate?	309
Summary.....	310
VERBS L7 – THE IMPERATIVE	311
The Use of the Imperative	312
Construction.....	312
Imperative Construction of Separable Verbs.....	312
Irregularities	313
Exceptions	313
Word Order	313
Imperative of Separable Verbs.....	314
VERBS L8 – REFLEXIVE VERBS.....	315
What are Reflexive Verbs?	316
Reflexive Pronouns	316
True Reflexive Verbs	316
Partial Reflexive Verbs.....	317
Dative or Accusative?	317
Word Order	318
Summary.....	318
VERBS L9 – THE VERB "WERDEN"	319
When do we use "werden"?	320
Use as a Main Verb	320
Use as a Auxiliary Verb	320
Conjugation	321

“worden” or “geworden”?	321
VERBS L10 – THE VERB “LASSEN”	322
When do we use “lassen”?	323
Use as a Main Verb	323
Use as a Auxillary Verb	323
Conjugation of “lassen”	325
“lassen” or “gelassen”	325
Word Order	326
Summary	326
VERBS L11 – THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE (Partizip 1)	327
What is the Partizip 1 (Present Participle)?	328
The Construction	328
Use of the Partizip 1	328
Summary	329
Tip	329
VERBS L12 – THE PAST PARTICIPLE (Partizip 2)	330
What is the Partizip 2 (Past Participle)?	331
Use of the Partizip 2	331
Regular Construction	331
Irregular Construction	332
Construction with CompOund Verbs	333
Task	334
VERBS L 13 – THE SUBJUNCTIVE 1 (Konjunktiv 1)	335
What is the Konjunktiv 1?	336
What is Indirect Speech?	336
Specific Expressions	336
Constructing the Konjunktiv 1	337
Good News	338
Tenses in Konjunktiv 1	338
Summary	338
Task	338

VERBS L14.1 – THE SUBJUNCTIVE 2 (KONJUNKTIV 2)	339
What is the Konjunktiv 2?	340
Use of the Konjunktiv 2	340
Construction (Präsens - Present Tense)	340
The Most Important Verbs	341
Construction with “WÜRDEN”	341
Word order	342
Summary	342
Task	342
VERBS L14.2 – B1 THE SUBJUNCTIVE 2 (KONJUNKTIV 2)	343
Comparison: Indikativ vs. Konjunktiv 2	344
Use of the Konjunktiv 2	344
Construction (Past)	345
Word Order	345
Summary	346
VERBS L15.1 – THE PASSIVE VOICE	347
What is the Passive Voice?	348
Comparison of Active & Passive	348
The Passive Voice in German	348
Task	349
VERBS L15.2 – THE PROCESS PASSIVE (VORGANGSPASSIV)	350
What is the Process Passive?	351
Construction (Präsens)	351
Word Order	352
Verbs without Passive voice	352
Task	353
VERBS L15.3 – THE PROCESS PASSIVE IN ALL TENSES	354
Overview	355
From Active to Passive	355
Präsens (Simple Present Tense)	355
Perfekt (Present Perfect Tense)	355

Präteritum (Simple Past)	356
Past Perfect	356
Futur 1 (WERDEN – Future)	356
Futur 2 (Perfect Future).....	357
VERBS L15.4 – THE IMPERSONAL PASSIVE.....	358
What is the Impersonal Passive?	359
Impersonal Passive with Dative Complements	359
Impersonal Passive with Prepositional Complements.....	360
The Pronoun “MAN”	360
“ES” with the Normal Passive Voice.....	360
Summary.....	361
Task	361
VERBS L15.5 – THE STATUS PASSIVE (Zustandspassiv)	362
What is the Zustandspassiv?	363
Construction Present	363
Status Passive with Modal Verbs	363
Word Order	364
Status Passive in all Tenses	364
Other Examples	364
Task	365
VERBS L 16 – VERBS WITH COMPLEMENTS	366
Basic Info about Complements	366
Summary.....	368
Task	368
VERBS L16.1 – VERBS WITH NOMINATIVE COMPLEMENTS	369
Nominative Complements	370
Examples	370
Verbs with Two Nominative Complements.....	370
Sentences without Nominative	371
Summary.....	371
VERBS L16.2 – VERBS WITH ACCUSATIVE COMPLEMENTS	372

Accusative Complements.....	373
Examples	373
Word Order	373
Double Accusative Complements	374
Summary.....	375
VERBS L16.3 – VERBS WITH DATIVE COMPLEMENTS	376
Dative Complements.....	377
Examples	377
Word Order	378
Summary.....	378
Task	378
VERBS L16.4 – VERBS WITH DATIVE & ACCUSATIVE COMPLEMENTS.....	379
Dative & Accusative Complements.....	380
Word Order	381
Summary.....	382
Task	382
VERBS L16.5 – VERBS WITH GENITIVE COMPLEMENTS.....	383
Genitive Complements.....	384
Nominative + Genitive	384
Nominative + Accusative + Genitive	384
Summary.....	385
VERBS L16.6 – VERBS WITH PREPOSITIONAL COMPLEMENTS	386
Prepositional Complements	387
Examples	387
Examples: Two Complements	387
Questions with Prepositions.....	388
Summary.....	389
Task	389
TENSES L1 – The Präsens (Simple Present Tense)	390
Possible German Verb Endings	391
Present Tense – Conjugation Endings.....	391

Conjugation of "STRONG" Verbs in Present Tense	391
Conjugation: Irregular / Special Verbs	392
Special Features	393
General Examples	394
Summary.....	394
Tenses L2 – Use Of The Präsens (Present Tense).....	395
Use of the Präsens (Simple present Tense) in German.....	395
Summary.....	396
TENSES L3 – HOW TO EXPRESS THAT SOMETHING IS HAPPENING RIGHT NOW?	397
TENSES L4 – THE FUTURE 1 (WERDEN-FUTURE)	398
What is the Future 1?	399
Examples	399
Construction.....	399
Word Order	399
When do we use the Future Tense?	400
Future with Präsens (Simple Present Tense)	400
Future with the Futur 1 (the Future Tense)	400
Comparison	401
Task	401
TENSES L5 – PERFEKT (German Perfect Tense).....	402
The Different Tenses for the Past	403
Examples for the Perfekt	403
Construction.....	403
Word Order	405
Task	405
Tenses L6 – The Simple Past Tense In German (Präteritum)	406
What is the Simple Past Tense (Präteritum)?	407
Conjugation: Regular Verbs	407
Conjugation: Irregular Verbs	408
TENSES L7 – Präteritum vs. Perfekt.....	409
Difference in Meaning	410

Difference in Use.....	410
Verbs using Präteritum (Simple Past) in Spoken Language.....	410
Excessive use of Präteritum.....	411
Summary.....	411
TENSES L8 – THE PAST PERFECT (PLUSQUAMPERFEKT)	412
Basic Info	413
Examples	413
Overview	413
Construction.....	413
Use of the Past Perfect.....	414
Summary.....	414
TENSES L9 – THE FUTURE PERFECT (FUTUR 2).....	415
What is the Future 2?	416
Examples	416
Use of the Future Perfect (Futur 2)	416
Construction.....	417
Auxiliary Verb: “SEIN” or “HABEN”?	417
Word Order	418
Summary.....	418

FORWARD

When you tell someone that you're learning German, you probably often hear one of these phrases:

- *"Wow, German is super hard to learn, right?"*
- *"Is the grammar really that difficult?"*
- *"That would be too hard for me!"*
- *"Why don't you learn Spanish or French instead? Those languages are a lot easier!"*

I'm sure you've heard at least one of these or something similar from friends or coworkers! Am I right?

In my opinion, they're wrong!

"German grammar is simple. It's just explained in a complicated way!"

Jan Richter – Founder of EasyDeutsch

The explanations on my website and in this eBook are all written from the perspective of the student. Therefore, I concentrate on the 95% of German grammar that follows simple rules and not the other 5% that most other grammar books focus on.



I avoid using unnecessary grammar terms that you don't need to understand how the language works.

With this eBook and my website, www.easy-deutsch.de, I have one goal.

My goal:

I want to prove that German grammar is simple and easy!

BEST FRIENDS

IF YOU WANT TO PRACTICE WHAT
YOU LEARN IN THIS EBOOK,
PLEASE CHECK OUT MY EBOOK:
DAF GRAMMAR TRAINER



IF YOU DON'T HAVE IT YET, GET IT ON
[SHOP.EASY-DEUTSCH.DE/ENGLISCH/](https://shop.easy-deutsch.de/englisch/)
THE DAF GRAMMAR TRAINER
PROVIDES YOU EXERCISES (A1-B2)
FOR EVERY TOPIC I EXPLAIN IN THIS
EBOOK.

MOST EFFECTIVE TOGETHER

**DO YOU KNOW THAT I HAVE
PUBLISHED 10 EBOOKS ABOUT
GERMAN GRAMMAR?**

-

IMPORTANT INFORMATION:

PARTS OF SPEECH

I avoid unnecessary grammar terms but knowing these parts of speech is essential.

Adjective		<i>schön, neu, alt, einfach, ...</i>
Adverb		<i>bald, hier, morgens, ...</i>
Article	Definite Article	<i>der, die, das, dem, ...</i>
	Indefinite Article	<i>ein, eine, einem, ...</i>
	Possessive Determiner	<i>mein, dein, sein, ...</i>
	Negative Article	<i>kein, keine, keinem, ...</i>
	Demonstrative Article	<i>dieser, jener, ...</i>
Conjunction	Coordinating	<i>denn, und, oder, ...</i>
	Subordinating	<i>dass, weil, wenn, ...</i>
Noun		<i>Computer, Buch, Frau, ...</i>
Particle		<i>sehr, denn, ja, mal, ...</i>
Preposition		<i>auf, aus, gegen, in, an, bei, ...</i>
Pronoun	Personal Pronoun	<i>ich, du, er, sie, es, ...</i>
	Possessive Pronoun	<i>meins, deins, unseres, ...</i>
	Reflexive Pronoun	<i>mich, mir, dich, dir, sich, ...</i>
	Relative Pronoun	<i>der, welche, was, ...</i>
	Demonstrative Pronoun	<i>dieser, jenes, der, die, ...</i>
	Indefinite Pronoun	<i>man, etwas, niemand, ...</i>
Verb	Main Verb	<i>lehren, lesen, kaufen, ...</i>
	Auxiliary Verb	<i>sein, haben, werden</i>
	Modal Verb	<i>können, müssen, sollen, ...</i>

If you don't know the difference between these parts of speech, I recommend looking at how you use them in your native language. It's usually the same as in German (for English it is!).

MEANINGS OF THE COLORS AND MARKINGS:

To better understand the explanations and visualize them, I use different colors for different things.

CASES

I use different colors for different cases and suggest using the same colors or developing your own color code. The colors will help you subconsciously learn which cases belong to which verbs and prepositions.

Case	Examples for your vocabulary list
Nominative	<i>sein, werden, bleiben</i>
Accusative	<i>für, um, durch, ...</i>
Dative	<i>helfen, gefallen, aus, mit, ...</i>
Genitive	<i>gedenken, bedürfen, während, außerhalb, ...</i>

Example:

- „*Ich* gebe *dir* den Schlüssel *meines Hauses*.“

POINT OF EMPHASIS

With the highlighted **blue** words, I want to emphasize which part of the sample sentence I am talking about.

Parts that are related but not the direct point of emphasis are **bolded**. If a second color marking is needed, I use **dark red**. (rare)

Example:

„Ich **werde** dir **helfen**, **nachdem** du den Müll **rausgebracht hast**.“

MC = Future



SC = Perfect

(Also see the lesson: Temporal Clauses)

PLEASE READ ME!

HOW TO WORK WITH THIS EBOOK?



The QR codes at the beginning of each lesson will take you to a video where I explain the grammar for the exercises. ATM some videos aren't published yet. You can watch the German only video on my German Youtube-Channel instead.



My ebook "DaF Grammar Trainer" provides you with exercises to every single topic I explain in this reference ebook.



This is a reference ebook. That means there is no fixed order for the lessons. The idea is that you check the topic at the moment you struggle with something or if you know that you are still struggling with certain topics and simply want to repeat them or try a new approach because you didn't get the system yet. And yes, there is a system behind everything!

Finally Master German grammar!

THE TRANSLATION FILE

I provide you with the **translation** of every single **sample phrase**. In my opinion, it's very important that you understand what the example means in order to understand the grammar. It's a separate file. Check it out whenever you struggle to understand the sample phrases.

IS THERE A PRINTED VERSION?

YES & NO!

YES, there is a printed GERMAN ONLY version of this ebook on [amazon.de](https://www.amazon.de). This means no English translations or explanations. It's made for more advanced students.

NO, there is no printed version of this ebook but you got it as a printer-friendly PDF file. You can simply print out the whole ebook or parts of it yourself.

ADJECTIVES

ADJECTIVES L1 – What is an Adjective?

What is an Adjective?	35
Do have to decline Adjectives?	35
More Examples	36
Adjective: “groß”	36
Task	36



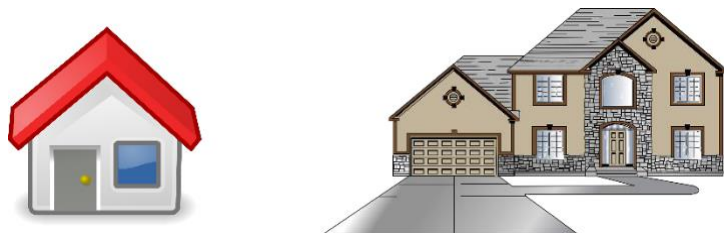
Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/adjectivesL1/>

WHAT IS AN ADJECTIVE?

Adjectives are "**describing words**". They assign characteristics to people and things, so they show what someone or something is like. You can ask about them with "Wie?" / "How?". You can intensify adjectives for comparisons.

- „Das ist ein Haus." // „Das ist ein **großes** Haus."



That is a house. // That is a **big** house.

DO I HAVE TO DECLINE ADJECTIVES?

Short Answer: YES, but not always!

When adjectives come before a noun, you have to decline the adjective.

→ **That means they get an ending.**

Examples:

- „Der **junge** Mann lernt Deutsch.“
(The adjective "jung" comes before the noun "Mann" → Adjective declension)
- **But:** „Der Mann ist **jung**.“
(There is no noun behind "jung" → No adjective declension)

**Remember!**

The ending depends on the case and the article in front of the adjective.

MORE EXAMPLES

In German grammar, you have to decline any adjective in front of a noun.

ADJECTIVE: "groß"



- „Das ist ein **großes** Haus.“ – **das** Haus
- „Das ist ein **großer** Baum.“ – **der** Baum
- „Das ist eine **große** Katze.“ – **die** Katze

TASK

Can you see the pattern?

ADJECTIVES L2 – ADJECTIVE DECLENSION

In German, you must decline adjectives in front of nouns. That means they get an ending.

The ending depends on:

- the gender
- the case
- the article in front of the adjective

I divided the lesson into five sub-lessons.



<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/adjectivesL2/>

ADJECTIVES L2.1 – ADJECTIVE DECLENSION AFTER DEFINITE ARTICLES

Adjective Endings after Definite Articles.....	39
Examples	39
Definite Article Words	39
Summary	40



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/adjectivesL2-1/>

ADJECTIVE ENDINGS AFTER DEFINITE ARTICLES

	Nominative	Accusative	Dative	Genitive
Masculine	der schöne Mann	den schön en Mann	dem schön en Mann	des schön en Mannes
Feminine	die schön e Frau	die schön e Frau	der schön en Frau	der schön en Frau
Neuter	das schön e Haus	das schön e Haus	dem schön en Haus	des schön en Hauses
Plural	die schön en Männer	die schön en Männer	den schön en Männern	der schön en Männer

**Tip:**

The definite article already indicates the case. That means the adjective does not have to.

Plural, dative, genitive, and accusative masculine get the ending "en", no matter which article precedes them. The rest get the ending "-e".

EXAMPLES

- „Das rote **Auto** gehört dem reich**en** Mann.“
- „Hans sitzt auf dem alt**en** Sofa.“
- „Das Haus steht neben dem groß**en** Park.“
- „Das klein**e** Haus ist grau.“

DEFINITE ARTICLE WORDS

The definite article also includes the words "**diese**", "**jede**", "**alle**" and "**welche**".

If the article comes after one of these words, it also gets the ending as with the definite article. Since these words already have a declined ending, the adjective can remain in the basic form with the ending "e" or "en".

SUMMARY

- Plural, dative, genitive, and accusative masculine get the ending "en".
- The rest gets the ending "e".
- "Diese", "jede", "manche" and "welche" use the same endings – You use them like definite articles!

ADJECTIVES L2.2 – ADJECTIVE DECLENSION AFTER INDEFINITE ARTICLES

Adjective Endings after Indefinite Articles.....	42
Adjective Endings after Possessive Articles	42
Adjective Endings after „kein“	43
Examples	43
Summary	43



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/adjectivesL2-2/>

ADJECTIVE ENDINGS AFTER INDEFINITE ARTICLES

	Nominative	Accusative	Dative	Genitive
Masculine	ein schön ^{er} Mann	ein ^{en} schön ^{en} Mann	ein ^{em} schön ^{en} Mann	ein ^{es} schön ^{en} Mannes
Feminine	eine schön ^e Frau	eine schön ^e Frau	ein ^{er} schön ^{en} Frau	ein ^{er} schön ^{en} Frau
Neuter	ein schön ^{es} Haus	ein schön ^{es} Haus	ein ^{em} schön ^{en} Haus	ein ^{es} schön ^{en} Hauses
Plural	--	--	--	--

Can you see the pattern?

Nominative singular and accusative singular get the endings according to the definite articles. Everything else gets "en".

Those endings also apply to possessive articles such as "mein", "dein", etc., and to the negative article such as "kein". The only difference is that of course, they exist in the plural.

ADJECTIVE ENDINGS AFTER POSSESSIVE ARTICLES

	Nominative	Accusative	Dative	Genitive
Masculine	mein schön ^{er} Mann	mein ^{en} schön ^{en} Mann	mein ^{em} schön ^{en} Mann	mein ^{es} schön ^{en} Mannes
Feminine	meine schön ^e Frau	meine schön ^e Frau	mein ^{er} schön ^{en} Frau	mein ^{er} schön ^{en} Frau
Neuter	mein schön ^{es} Haus	mein schön ^{es} Haus	mein ^{em} schön ^{en} Haus	mein ^{es} schön ^{en} Hauses
Plural	mein ^e schön ^{en} Frauen	mein ^e schön ^{en} Frauen	mein ^{en} schön ^{en} Frauen	mein ^{er} schön ^{en} Frauen

Nominative singular and accusative singular get their endings according to the definite articles. Everything else gets "en."

ADJECTIVE ENDINGS AFTER "kein"

	Nominative	Accusative	Dative	Genitive
Masculine	kein schön er Mann	kein en schön en Mann	kein em schön en Mann	kein es schön en Mannes
Feminine	kein e schön e Frau	kein e schön e Frau	kein er schön en Frau	kein er schön en Frau
Neuter	kein schön es Haus	kein schön es Haus	kein em schön en Haus	kein es schön en Hauses
Plural	kein e schön en Frauen	kein e schön en Frauen	kein en schön en Frauen	kein er schön en Frauen

Nominative singular and accusative singular get the endings according to the definite articles. Everything else gets "en".

EXAMPLES

- „Mein **neues** **Auto** steht in der Garage.“
- „Hans sitzt auf einer **alten** **Kiste**.“
- „Das Haus ist in keinem **guten** **Zustand**.“
- „Das ist ein **schmales** **Bett**.“

SUMMARY

- Accusative masculine, plural, dative, and genitive take the ending "en".
- The rest get the ending of the corresponding definite article.

ADJECTIVES L2.3 – ADJ. DECLENSION WITHOUT ARTICLES

Adjective Endings without Articles	45
Examples	45
Summary	46
Task	46



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/adjectivesL2-3/>

ADJECTIVE ENDINGS WITHOUT ARTICLES

	Nominative	Accusative	Dative	Genitive
Masculine	schöne r Mann	schöne n Mann	schöne m Mann	schöne n Mannes
Feminine	schöne e Frau	schöne e Frau	schöne r Frau	schöne r Frau
Neuter	schöne s Haus	schöne s Haus	schöne m Haus	schöne n Hauses
Plural	schöne e Frauen	schöne e Frauen	schöne n Frauen	schöne r Frauen

Can you see the pattern?

Without an article before the adjective, the adjective is forced to show the case. So, you have to add the ending of the definite article to the end of the adjective. The only exception is the genitive masculine and neutral. Here, the "s" at the end of the noun already clearly shows that it is the genitive, and therefore the adjective remains with its "en"- ending.

Declension after "viel/e", "einige" and "mehrere": After those words, the adjective always gets the ending of the corresponding definite article because they are in front of nouns that follow the rule of the null article. There are some more rare ones like that, which you can find [here \(click\)](#). You can always use the pattern adjective + ending of the corresponding definite article, but sometimes there can be a second version that is also correct.

EXAMPLES

- „Junge **Frauen** sind oft sehr **hübsch**.“
- „Ein Deutscher trinkt jedes Jahr 130 Liter **kalt**es** Bier**.“
- „Der Ring ist aus **pure**m** Gold**.“
- „Dort stehen **rote Autos**.“

SUMMARY

If there is no article to signal the case, the adjective's ending must do that job. To do so, it gets the ending of the corresponding definite article.

Only exceptions: Genitive masculine and genitive neuter – You always add the ending "en" because the "s" at the end of the noun already signals the genitive case. We don't need the adjective to do the signaling. "Viele" and "manche" are always followed by an adjective with the ending of the corresponding definite article.

TASK



If you haven't done it yet, memorize the definite articles for all four cases. The declension is based on the definite article, and all endings correspond to those of the definite articles.

ADJECTIVES L2.4 – IRREGULARITIES IN ADJECTIVE DECLENSION

If an adjective ends in "-e", we do not need to add a second "e":

- "leise" – "ein leises Kind" (Wrong: ein leisees Kind)



If an adjective ends in "el", we have to remove the "e" from the "el":

- "sensibel" – "ein sensibles Kind" (Wrong: "ein sensibeles Kind")
- "dunkel" – "ein dunkler Wald" (Wrong: "ein dunkeler Wald")

If an adjective ends in "-er" and has a vowel (a, e, i, o, u) directly before that "er", we have to remove the "e" from the "-er":

- "teuer" – "ein teures Auto" (Wrong: "ein teures Auto")
- "sauer" – "ein sauerer Apfel" (Wrong: "ein saurer Apfel")

BUT: "sauber" – "ein sauberes Zimmer" (No vowel in front of "-er")

In terms of the adjective "hoch", we have to remove the "c":

- „Der Turm ist hoch.“
 - „Das ist ein hoher Turm.“
- (Wrong: „Das ist ein hoher Turm.“)

For adjectives that end in "a", and those that come from city names and have the ending "er", there is no declension:

- „Das ist ein rosa Kleid.“
- „Die lila Bluse ist hässlich.“
- „Der Frankfurter Flughafen ist riesig.“

ADJECTIVES L2.5 – ADJ. DECLENSION: A STEP-BY-STEP GUIDE

SUMMARY OF GENERAL RULES

The ending of the adjective depends on the article in front and the case.

It differs depending on whether it is preceded by a definite or indefinite article (or possessive or negative article) or no article at all.



Questions so far? No? Let's start!

Step 1: Is there an article in front of the adjective?

- **No:**

→ Add the definite article ending (der, die, das, ...) for that case.

"schnell**e** Autos" (die Autos)

Exception: Genitive masculine & genitive neutral always get the ending "en".

- **Yes:** → **Onward to Step 2**

Step 2: Is the word "viele", "einige" or "mehrere" in front of the adjective?

- **Yes:**

→ Add the definite article ending (der, die, das, ...) for that case.

"viele schnell**e** Autos" (die Autos)

- **No:** → **Onward to Step 3**



Step 3: Is it accusative masculine, dative, genitive, or plural?

- **Yes:**

→ Add the ending "en".

"mit den schnell**en** Autos" (Dative Plural)

"die schnell**en** Autos" (Nominative Plural)

- **No:** → **Onward to Step 4**

Step 4: Does the article have an ending?

- **No:**

→ Add the ending of the definite article for the corresponding case.

"**ein** schnell**es** Auto" (das Auto – Nominative / Accusative)

"**mein** schön**er** Mann" (der Mann – Nominative)

- **Yes:**

→ Add the ending "e".

"das schnell**e** Auto" (Nominative / Accusative Neuter)

"eine schön**e** Frau" (Nominative / Accusative Feminine)

Which ending for the adjective?



It's not that hard!

Works 100% !!!



ADJECTIVES L3 – COMPARISONS OF ADJECTIVES

BASIC INFO

You intensify adjectives when you want to compare something with them.

There are three forms:

- the normal adjective → „Das Haus ist **groß**.“ (+)
- the comparative form → „Das Haus ist **größer**.“ (++)
- the superlative form → „Das Haus ist **am größten**.“ (+++)

There are several ways of comparison, so I have divided this lesson into four subtopics:

1. The Comparative
2. The Superlative
3. Irregular Adjectives and Declension
4. Comparisons without Intensification



ADJECTIVES L3.1 – THE COMPARATIVE FORM

USE OF COMPARATIVE

The comparative is the first form of comparison and describes things that are **NOT** the same.

CONSTRUCTION

You have to form the comparative as follows: adjective + "-er".

The comparative form is often followed by "als" and the second noun, which you compare to the subject.

- „Kevin rennt **schneller** als Max.“
- „Lisa ist **kleiner** als Maria.“



IRREGULARITIES

If the adjective ends in "el", the "e" is removed when constructing the comparative form.

(That does not fit for the superlative.)

- sensibel – sensib**ler** – am sensibelsten
- dunkel – dunk**ler** – am dunkelsten
- flexibel – flexib**ler** – am flexibelsten

If the adjective ends in "er", and has a vowel in front of it, the "e" is omitted when using the comparative form.

- teuer – te**urer** – am teuersten
- sauer – sa**urer** – am sauersten
- sauber – saub**er** – am saubersten

Note that adjectives rarely end in "er".

Monosyllabic adjectives often form the comparative with an umlaut (ä, ö, ü).

- groß – gr**ößer** – am gr**ößten**
- klug – kl**üger** – am kl**ügsten**
- alt – **älter** – am **ältesten**

ADJECTIVES L3.2 – THE SUPERLATIVE FORM

USE OF THE SUPERLATIVE

The superlative is the highest form of comparison. A superlative adjective expresses the extreme or highest degree of quality. We use a superlative adjective to describe the extreme quality of one thing in a group of things.

CONSTRUCTION

The superlative is formed as follows: with the definite article + adjective + ending "-ste"
OR with "am" + adjective + ending "-sten"

- „Kevin ist **der schnellste** Läufer.“
- „Kevin rennt **am schnellsten**.“

IRREGULARITIES

Adjectives ending in "-d", "-t", "-s", "-ß", "x", or "z" usually form the superlative with "-est-":

- leicht – leichter – am leicht**esten**
- heiß – heißer – am heiß**esten**
- schlecht – schlechter – am schlecht**esten**



Exception: groß – größer – am größten

Monosyllabic adjectives often form the superlative with an umlaut.

- groß – größer – am gr**ö**ßten
- klug – klüger – am kl**ü**gsten
- alt – älter – am ä**l**testen

ADJECTIVES L3.3 – IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES AND DECLENSION

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

A few adjectives do not follow any rules and form their comparative and superlative forms irregularly.

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
gut	besser	am besten
groß	größer	am größten
hoch	höher	am höchsten
nah	näher	am nächsten
viel	mehr	am meisten
gern/lieb	lieber	am liebsten

DECLENSION

If the comparative or superlative is in front of a noun, then it must be declined according to the adjective declension.

- „Er hat ein schnelleres Auto als ich.“ (Accusative – Neuter)
- „Jan ist ein besserer Lehrer als Max.“ (Nominative – Masculine)
- „Jermaine ist der schnellste Mann der Welt.“ (Nominative – Masculine)



In the comparative, we simply add the adjective to the comparative form. In the superlative, we adjust the ending "-en" according to the **adjective declension**.

ADJECTIVES L3.4 – ANOTHER WAY TO COMPARE

The adjective's so-called "positive form" is the base form, and we can also use it to compare something.

You form the comparison with the ordinary adjective and the following expressions:

"(genau)so... wie" (→ the same/equal)

- „Jan ist **so schwer wie** Marcel.“
- „Jan ist **genauso schwer wie** Marcel.“

Meaning: Jan weighs (exactly) the same as Marcel.



halb so... wie (→ half)

- „Der Kuchen ist **halb so groß wie** der andere.“

Meaning: The cake is half as big as the other one.

doppelt so ... wie (→ double/twice)

- „Der Kuchen ist **doppelt so groß wie** der andere.“

Meaning: The cake is twice as big as the other one.

fast so... wie (→ close/almost equal)

- „Der Kuchen ist **fast so groß wie** der andere.“

Meaning: The cake is almost as big as the other one.

nicht so ... wie (→ not the same/equal)

- „Der Kuchen ist **nicht so groß wie** der andere.“

Meaning: The cake is not as big as the other one.

ADJECTIVES L4 – PARTICIPLES AS ADJECTIVES

The Different Participles	56
The Present Participle as Adjective	56
The Past Participle as an Adjective	57
Tip for easy Understanding.....	57



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/adjectivesL4/>

THE DIFFERENT PARTICIPLES

We can construct two different participles from a verb:

- Verb (Infinitive – base form) → "laufen"
- Partizip 1 / Partizip Präsens (Present Participle) → "laufend"
- Partizip 2 / Partizip Perfekt (Past Participle) → "gelaufen"

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE (PARTIZIP 1) AS ADJECTIVE

Construction:

Infinitive + d + Adjective Declension + Noun				
das	lachen	d	e	Kind

- „Das **lachende** Kind spielt im Garten.“
„Das Kind lacht und spielt im Garten.“

The Partizip 1 (Present Participle) as an adjective shows that two things are happening simultaneously.

- „Der Hund steht vor der Tür und bellt.“
„Der **bellende** Hund steht vor der Tür.“
„Der Hund steht **bellend** vor der Tür.“
- „Die Frau schreit und rennt aus dem Haus.“
„Die **schreiende** Frau rennt aus dem Haus.“
„Die Frau rennt **schreiend** aus dem Haus.“



Remember:

If the Partizip 1 (Present Participle) is in front of a noun, you must decline it.

THE PAST PARTICIPLE (PARTIZIP 2) AS AN ADJECTIVE

Construction:

Partizip 2 + Adjective Declension + Noun			
das	gebraucht	e	Auto

- „Ich verkaufe das **gebrauchte** Auto.“

The “Partizip 2” (Past Participle) signals that the noun has a specific state or that two actions didn't occur simultaneously.

„Ich verkaufe das Auto.“ „Das Auto ist **gebraucht**.“

- „Die Frau ist gebildet und Professorin.“

„Die **gebildete** Frau ist Professorin.“

Before she became a professor, she educated herself.

- „Ich kaufe das Haus. Es ist neu gebaut.“

„Ich kaufe das neu **gebaute** Haus.“

Before I bought the house, it was newly built.

TIP FOR EASY UNDERSTANDING

Partizip 1 (Present Participle): Two things are happening simultaneously.

- „Das **weinende** Kind rennt zu seiner Mutter.“
- „Das Kind **weint**.“ „Das Kind rennt zu sein Mutter.“

Partizip 2 (Past Participle): Two things aren't happening simultaneously.

- „Der **heruntergefallene** Apfel liegt auf der Wiese.“
- „Der Apfel **ist heruntergefallen**.“ „Er liegt auf der Wiese.“

ADJECTIVES L5 – ADJECTIVES AS NOUNS

General Info.....	59
Comparison	59
Common Examples	60
Participles as Nouns	60
Summary	61



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/adjectivesL5/>

GENERAL INFO

You can also use adjectives and participles as nouns.

They then mostly stand for people or abstracts (things you can't touch).

They are nouns, but you still must decline them like adjectives. You usually omit the noun because it is obvious and/or common knowledge. The adjective then becomes a noun and must be capitalized.

- „Ein fremder Mann klingelt an der Tür.“
„Ein **Fremder** klingelt an der Tür.“
- „Ein obdachloser Mensch schläft auf der Straße.“
„Ein **Obdachloser** schläft auf der Straße.“

COMPARISON

Usually, the following applies:

	Article +	Adjective/Participle +	Noun
Sandra hat schon wieder	einen	neuen	Freund.

When using the adjective/participle as a noun, remove the original noun (it must be obvious what we are talking about):

	Article +	Adjective/Participle as Noun
Sandra hat schon wieder	einen	Neuen.

“Freund” is obvious here and can be omitted. The Adjective becomes a noun, and you must capitalize it. However, you still have to apply the adjective declension. Nouns such as “Mensch”, “Mann” or “Frau” are often omitted because we usually know who we are talking about.

COMMON EXAMPLES

Adjective	Adjective as Noun	Adjective	Adjective as Noun
alt	der Alte	dumm	der Dumme
arbeitslos	der Arbeitslose	gut	das Gute (abstract)
bekannt	der Bekannte	klein	der Kleine
blond	die Blonde	neu	der Neue
böse	das Böse (abstract)	krank	der Kranke
deutsch	der Deutsche	tot	der Tote

- „Die **Deutschen** arbeiten viel.“

PARTICIPLES AS NOUNS

As described in lesson 4, you can use participles as adjectives. Accordingly, we can omit the noun after them – if obvious – and use them as nouns, like any other adjective.

Partizip 1 (Present Participle)	Partizip 1 as Noun
anwesend	der Anwesende
abwesend	der Abwesende
reisend	der Reisende
vorsitzend	der Vorsitzende
überlebend	der Überlebende

- „Beim Flugzeugabsturz gab es keine **Überlebenden**.“

Partizip 2 (Past Participle)	Partizip 2 as Noun
angestellt	der Angestellte
betrunken	der Betrunkene
gefangen	der Gefangene
prostituiert	die Prostituierte
vermisst	der Vermisste
verletzt	der Verletzte

- „Der **Vermisste** konnte noch nicht gefunden werden.“

SUMMARY

- When you use adjectives or participles as nouns, you usually omit the noun (normally "Mann", "Frau", "Mensch") because it is obvious or universally known.
- The adjectives remain in their adjectival declension corresponding to the article and case.

ADJECTIVES L6 – CREATING ADJECTIVES

General Info.....	63
Adjectives from Adjectives	63
Adjectives from Verbs.....	63
Adjectives from Nouns.....	64
Summary	65



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/adjectivesL6/>

GENERAL INFO

- In German, you can use prefixes and suffixes to form adjectives from many nouns and verbs.
- In addition, by adding the suffixes, you change the meaning of the adjective.
- Unfortunately, there are countless possibilities.
- The following forms are the most important and most common ones.
- However, there are no general rules since you can use more than 30 different prefixes and suffixes for adjective formation.

ADJECTIVES FROM ADJECTIVES

With the **prefixes "in-", "des-", and "un-"** we can create the opposite of the adjective:

- "kompetent" vs. "**in**kompetent" → not competent
- "interessiert" vs. "**des**interessiert" → not interested
- "beliebt" vs. "**un**beliebt" → not loved

**Advice:**

There is no general rule for determining which prefix to use.

ADJECTIVES FROM VERBS

With the **ending "-bar"** we can express that something is possible to do.

You drop the verb ending "-en".

- "**ess**bar" → You can eat it. (edible)
- "**trink**bar" → You can drink it. (drinkable)
- "**mach**bar" → It can be done or made. (doable/makeable/possible)

ADJECTIVES FROM NOUNS

We use the **ending "-isch"** to describe many nationalities.

You have to drop the original ending.

- "der Italiener" → "**italienisch**"

- "der Russe" → "**russisch**"

But: "der Deutsche" → "**deutsch**"

With the **ending "-lich"** we can talk about the frequency or ownership of something.
(Monosyllabic words gain an umlaut).

- "der Tag" → "**täglich**" → every day

- "der Monat" → "**monatlich**" → every month

"das Haus der Eltern" → "das **elterliche** Haus" (seldomly used) → parents house

We use the **ending "-los"** to talk about the absence of something → in the sense of the "without".

Sometimes we have to add an "s" before "-los".

- „Ich habe keine Arbeit.“ → „Ich bin **arbeitslos**.“

- „Es gibt keine Aussicht auf Erfolg.“ → „Es ist **aussichtslos**.“

- „Ich habe keinen Erfolg.“ → „Ich bin **erfolglos**.“



Advice:

There is no universal rule determining when you have to insert the "s".

With the **ending "-arm"**, we can express that there is very little of something.

- "**fettarm**" → „Das Essen ist **fettarm**." → There is little fat.
- "**kalorienarm**" → „Der Jogurt ist **kalorienarm**." → The yogurt has few calories.
- "**vitaminarm**" → „Cola ist **vitaminarm**." → Cola has few vitamins.

With the **ending "-reich"**, we can express that there is a lot of something.

- "**erfolgreich**" → „Ich bin **erfolgreich**." → I am very successful.
- "**vitaminreich**" → „Das Essen ist **vitaminreich**." → The food is rich in vitamins.
- "**kalorienreich**" → „Das Essen ist sehr **kalorienreich**." → The food has many calories.

SUMMARY

- There is no standard rule.
- You have to learn the meanings of the suffixes and prefixes.
- After a while, you will feel how you can and cannot form the adjectives.
- At first glance, it doesn't look easy. It isn't! But in many other languages, you don't even have the opportunity to create adjectives. This is one of the reasons why German is one of the most creative languages in the world.

ADVERBS

ADVERBS L1 – WHAT ARE ADVERBS?

What are Adverbs?	67
Difference between Adverbs and Adjectives	67
Examples	67
Task	68



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/adverbsL1/>

WHAT ARE ADVERBS?

- Adverbs describe circumstances.
- They are related to verbs. → Adverb
- They describe the location, time, cause, or manner of action.
- We divide them into the following categories: Locative, Temporal, Causal and Modal.
- They can't be changed, and we do not decline them.

DIFFERENCE BETWEEN ADVERBS AND ADJECTIVES

Adjectives

- Adjectives describe nouns more precisely.
- They give further information about a thing or a person.
- If you use them before a noun, you must decline them according to the adjective declension.

Adverbs

- Adverbs describe circumstances and are related to a verb, NOT to a noun.
- They are used to describe how, when, why, or where something happens.
- Adverbs are unchangeable and can't be declined.

EXAMPLES

- „**Gestern** war ich bei einem **tollen** Konzert.“
- „Ich habe **ganz vorn** gestanden.“
- „Ich habe die Band **sehr gut** sehen können.“
- „**Deshalb** konnte ich auch viele **geniale** Fotos machen.“
- „Das Einzige, was mir nicht gefallen hat, war, dass ich **kaum** Platz hatte. Ich konnte **kaum** atmen.“

Gestern, blue = adverb

ganz, brown = particle (special kind of adverb)

tollen, bold = adjective

TASK

**Native Language Check:**

- Think about adverbs in your native language!
- Understand what it means for a word to be an adverb in your language!

ADVERBS

ADVERBS L2 – TEMPORAL ADVERBS

General Info.....	70
Examples: “Wann?”	70
Examples: “Ab wann?”	70
Examples: “Bis wann?”	71
Examples: “Seit wann?”	71
Examples: “Wie lange?”	71
Examples: “Wie oft?”	72
Summary	72



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/adverbsL2/>

GENERAL INFO

The group of temporal adverbs provides information about the point in time, time period, order, repetition, frequency...

→ Anything that has to do with time.

You can ask for them with the following question words: Wann?, Ab wann?, Wie lange?, Wie oft?, Bis wann?, Seit wann?

EXAMPLES: "WANN?"

A: „*Wann* warst du das letzte Mal bei Oma?“

B: „*Gestern*.“

A: „Und warst du *heute* schon bei deiner Tante?“

B: „Nein, da gehe ich *morgen* hin.“

Other examples: bald, damals, danach, dann, demnächst, gerade, gestern, heute, heutzutage, inzwischen, jetzt, montags, morgens, nachts, nie, niemals, schließlich, seitdem, sofort, später, vorerst, vorgestern, vorhin, ...

EXAMPLES: "AB WANN?"

A: „*Ab wann* kannst du mir helfen?“

B: „*Ab morgen* (kann ich dir helfen).“

A: „*Ab wann* wirst du Urlaub haben?“

B: „*Ab übermorgen* werde ich Urlaub haben.“

The question "ab wann?" always refers to the point in time when an action begins.
(Ab + temporal adverb)

Other examples: ab dann, ab jetzt, ab nun, ab morgen, ab übermorgen, ab sofort ...

EXAMPLES: "BIS WANN?"

A: „*Bis wann* kannst du mir helfen?“

B: „*Bis morgen* (kann ich dir helfen/habe ich Zeit).“

A: „*Bis wann* wirst du Urlaub haben?“

B: „*Bis übermorgen* werde ich Urlaub haben.“

The question "bis wann?" always refers to the point in time when an action ends. (bis + temporal adverb)

Other examples: bis dann, bis morgen, bis übermorgen, bis später, bis jetzt, bis nachher...

EXAMPLES: "SEIT WANN?"

A: „*Seit wann* hast du nicht mehr geschlafen?“

B: „*Seit gestern* habe ich nicht mehr geschlafen.“

A: „*Seit wann* lernst du Deutsch?“

B: „Ich lerne *seit gestern* Deutsch.“

The question "seit wann?" always refers to an action that has begun in the past and has not yet ended. (Seit + temporal adverb)

Other examples: seit gestern, seit vorgestern, schon immer, seit eben, seit gerade.

EXAMPLES: "WIE LANGE?"

A: „*Wie lange* hast du nicht mehr geschlafen?“

B: „*Seit gestern* habe ich nicht mehr geschlafen.“

A: „*Wie lange* sprichst du schon Englisch?“

B: „*Schon immer!* Meine Eltern sind aus Neuseeland.“

The question "wie lange?" asks for a period of time. It can be answered with seit + adverb when the action hasn't been completed yet.

Other Examples: seit eben, bis vorhin, schon immer, noch nie

EXAMPLES: "WIE OFT?"

A: „*Wie oft* gehst du ins Fitness-Studio?“

B: „Ich gehe *immer montags* ins Fitness-Studio.“

A: „*Wie oft* lernst du Deutsch?“

B: „Ich lerne *mehrmals* am Tag Deutsch.“

The question "wie oft?" is asking for a frequency. You can answer with an adverb that describes an amount or regularity.

Other Examples: selten, oft, öfters, mehrmals, einmal, zweimal, dreimal, immer montags/freitags/morgens/abends...

SUMMARY

Point in Time	bald, damals, dann, demnächst, gerade, gestern, heute, heutzutage, inzwischen, jetzt, nie, niemals, seitdem, sofort, später, vorgestern, vorhin, ...
Repetition/Frequency	morgens, mittags, abends, ... montags, dienstags, mittwochs,... immer, manchmal, selten, täglich, oft,...
Time Period	schon immer, seit eben, seit gestern,...
Order	zuerst, später, danach, anschließend, schließlich, nachher, erst, dann,...

ADVERBS

ADVERBS L3 – LOCATIVE ADVERBS

General Info	74
Examples: "Wo?"	74
Examples: "Wohin?/Woher?"	74
Preposition or Adverb	75
The difference between using a Preposition and an Adverb?	75



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/adverbsL3/>

GENERAL INFO

- Locative adverbs give information about a location.
- You ask for them with the questions “Wo?” (Where?), “Wohin?” (Where to?), “Woher?” (Where from?)



EXAMPLES: “WO?”

- „**Draußen** regnet es.“
- „**Drinnen** ist es schön warm.“
- „Papa, **da** ist Oma!“
- „**Überall** liegt Müll.“

Other adverbs answering the question “Wo?”: *rechts, links, oben, unten, drüben, hier, dort, hinten, vorn, irgendwo, innen, außen, nebenan, nirgends,...*

EXAMPLES: “WOHIN?/WOHER?”

Wohin?	Woher?	Wohin?	Woher?
nach links	von links	bergauf / bergab	
nach rechts	von rechts	rückwärts / vorwärts	
nach oben	von oben	aufwärts / abwärts	
nach unten	von unten	dorthin*	dorthier*
nach drinnen	von drinnen	rauf* / runter*	
nach draußen	von draußen	irgendwohin*	irgendwoher*

* For info about the use of "hin" / "her" and "rauf" / "runter", see the L3 Extra section.

PREPOSITION OR ADVERB

When answering the questions “Wo?”, “Wohin?”, “Woher?” you can use either a preposition + noun or an adverb.

- „**Wo** ist dein Vater?“ – "Im Keller!"
– "**Unten**!"
- „**Wohin** geht dein Vater?“ – "In den Keller!"
– "**Nach unten**!"
- „**Woher** kommt dein Vater?“ – "Aus dem Keller!"
– "**Von unten**!"

THE DIFFERENCE BETWEEN USING A PREPOSITION AND AN ADVERB?

- „**Wo** ist dein Vater?“ – "Im Keller!"
- „**Wo** ist dein Vater?“ – "**Unten**!"

With a preposition + noun, we explain **a specific, unchangeable location**.

"Im Keller" → nowhere else

With an adverb, we explain a non-specific, subjective place that depends on the speaker's point of view.

"**Unten**!" → It can be anywhere below, not necessarily in the basement.

ADVERBS

ADVERBS L3 EXTRA – HIN & HER

General Info.....	77
The Two Versions	77
Combined with other Adverbs	77
Combined with Verbs.....	78
Combined with a Preposition and a Verb	78



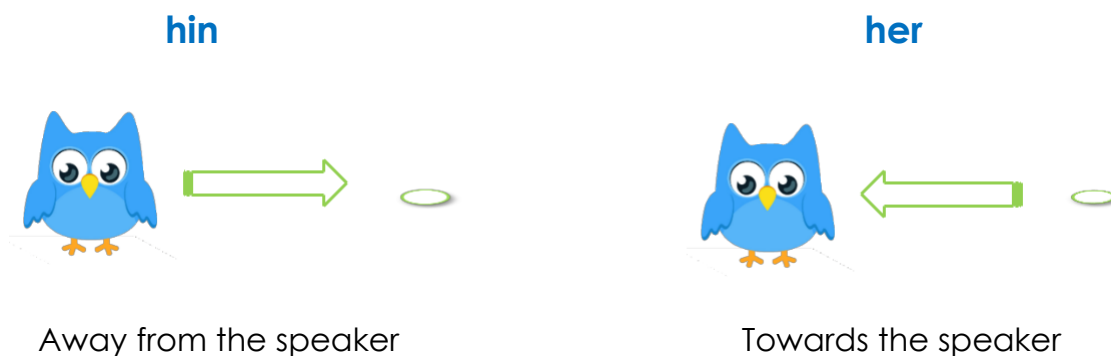
Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/adverbsL3e/>

GENERAL INFO

The adverb "**hin**" describes a movement away from the speaker.

The adverb "**her**" describes movement towards the speaker.



THE TWO VERSIONS

The questions "woher?" and "wohin?" ask about the direction.

They can be written together or separately.

- „**Wohin** gehst du?“ – „**Wo** gehst du **hin**?“ //EN: Where do you go to?
- „**Woher** kommst du?“ – „**Wo** kommst du **her**?“ //EN: Where do you come from?

COMBINED WITH OTHER ADVERBS

Using locative adverbs with "hin" or "her", we describe a specific direction towards or away from the speaker.

Examples: Dahin, daher, dorthin, dorthier, hierhin, hierher

We cannot directly combine them with other adverbs. However, if you still want to express a direction, you can combine "hin" and "her" with verbs or prepositions.

COMBINED WITH VERBS

"Hin" and "her" are often used as a prefix with a separable verb.

This works with all verbs of motion.

They then indicate the corresponding direction of the movement.

- „**Komm** bitte **her**! Ich muss mit dir reden.“
- „**Geht** bitte **irgendwo** anders **hin**! Ich brauche Ruhe!“

COMBINED WITH A PREPOSITION AND A VERB

To further specify the direction, we often combine them with prepositions.

- „Anna kam ins Haus **hinein** und ging gleich wieder **heraus**.“
- „Ich will den Berg **hinauflaufen** und dann wieder **herunterlaufen**.“
- „Ich kann über die Mauer **hinübersehen**, aber auch er kann von der anderen Seite **herübersehen**.“

ADVERBS

ADVERBS L4 – CONJUNCTIVE ADVERBS

What are Conjunctive Adverbs?.....	80
Conjunctive Adverbs vs. Conjunctions	80
The different Conjunctive Adverbs	81
Summary	81



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/adverbsL4/>

WHAT ARE CONJUNCTIVE ADVERBS?

Conjunctive adverbs are adverbs that combine sentences, clauses, words, and phrases with each other. The difference between conjunctions and conjunctive adverbs is that conjunctive adverbs are part of the clause while conjunctions are not.

They usually are in position 1. When they are somewhere else in the sentence, they are generally used as a modal, causal, temporal or locative adverb. In this case, the connecting character of those adverbs is then no longer in the foreground.

CONJUNCTIVE ADVERBS VS. CONJUNCTIONS

The difference between conjunctive adverbs and conjunctions:

Conjunctions are in position 0, adverbs in position 1

→ „Anna kommt später und Jan kommt auch später.“

Conjunction	Subject	Verb
-------------	---------	------

→ „Anna kommt später, außerdem kommt Jan auch später.“

Conjunctive Adverb	Verb	Subject
--------------------	------	---------

Conjunctive adverbs **never** send the verb to the end.

THE DIFFERENT CONJUNCTIVE ADVERBS

Meaning	Conjunctive Adverb
Copulative (adding)	außerdem, zudem, dazu, daneben, darüber hinaus, desgleichen, ebenso, ferner, weiter, zusätzlich
Place (locative)	daneben, darüber, darunter, dazwischen
Time (temporal)	davor, währenddessen, indessen, danach, anschließend
Reason (causal)	folglich, demzufolge, demnach, damit, somit, mithin, also, deswegen, deshalb, daher
Consequence (consecutive)	also, demzufolge, folglich, infolgedessen, mithin, so, somit, deswegen, deshalb
Opposed (adversative)	jedoch, doch, dagegen, stattdessen, hingegen, allerdings, dennoch, indes, indessen, vielmehr, demgegenüber, stattdessen
Limiting (restrictive)	insofern, nur, freilich, allerdings, indessen
Conceding (concessive)	trotzdem, dennoch, dessen ungeachtet, gleichwohl, immerhin, allerdings, sowieso, demzufolge

SUMMARY

- That means conjunctive adverbs are sentence links and conjunctions are not.
- Conjunctive adverbs don't necessarily have to be in position 1. However, if they are not in position 1, we often use them as Modal, Causal, Temporal, or Locative Adverbs.

ADVERBS

ADVERBS L5 – PARTICLES

What are Particles?	83
Characteristics of Particles	83
Different types of Particles:	83
Intensifying Particles (Gradpartikel)	83
Focus Particles (Fokuspartikel)	84
Negating Particles (Negationspartikel)	84
Conversational Particles (Gesprächspartikel)	84
Interjections (Ausdruckspartikel)	84
Onomatopoeia (Lautmalende Partikel)	85
Summary	85
Task	85



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/adverbsL5/>

WHAT ARE PARTICLES?

Particles are unchangeable words that aren't considered prepositions, adverbs or conjunctions.

CHARACTERISTICS OF PARTICLES

- You cannot ask for them.
- They make the language alive, can evaluate the whole sentence negatively or positively, and show feelings.
- We mainly use them in spoken language.
- You can remove them at any time.

DIFFERENT TYPES OF PARTICLES:

We divide them into:



- Gradpartikel
- Fokuspartikel
- Negationspartikel
- Modalpartikel
- Gesprächspartikel
- Ausdruckspartikel
- Lautmalende Partikel

INTENSIFYING PARTICLES (GRADPARTIKEL)

They always come before an adjective or adverb and either strengthen or weaken its meaning.

Depending on the particle, the strengthening or weakening can be small or large.

The most important ones: *absolut, außerordentlich, außergewöhnlich, äußerst, einigermaßen, enorm, etwas, extrem, ganz, höchst, kaum, komplett, recht, sehr, total, überaus, ungemein, ungewöhnlich, völlig, weit, ziemlich, zu*

Examples:

- „Der Fernseher ist **total** teuer.“
- „Die Situation ist mir **höchst** unangenehm.“

- „Deine Reaktion ist **völlig** übertrieben.“
- „Warum bist du heute so **überaus** nett zu mir?“
- „Das finde ich **total** bescheuert.“
- „Du bist heute **extrem** gut drauf!“

FOCUS PARTICLES (FOKUSPARTIKEL)

Focus particles emphasize or highlight something important. Focus particles are related to a specific part of the sentence and generally come before the part we want to highlight.

The most important ones: **wenig, etwas, einigermaßen, fast, ziemlich, so, sehr, ausgesprochen, besonders, ungemein, überaus, äußerst, zutiefst, höchst, zu**

Focus Particles Examples:

- „Die Show war toll. Mir haben **besonders** **die Lichteffekte** gefallen.“
- „Mir gefällt die Wohnung nicht. **Vor allem** **das Bad** ist zu klein.“
- „Was, du hast kein Facebook? **Sogar** **meine 80-jährige Oma** ist bei FB!“

NEGATING PARTICLES (NEGATIONSPARTIKEL)

The negation word "nicht" is a particle.

- „Ich fahre heute **nicht** zu Oma.“

CONVERSATIONAL PARTICLES (GESPRÄCHSPARTIKEL)

Conversational particles are calls, answers, and greetings.

For example: **ja, nein, hm, gern, okay, gut, genau, richtig, ...**

INTERJECTIONS (AUSDRUCKSPARTIKEL)

Expressions that show a state of mind.

For example: **oh, he!, schade!, pfui!, hurra!, igitt!, juhu!, au!, aua!, autsch! uh!, ah!, ach!, huch!, oho!, hoppla!, oje!, hm!, hihi!, ätsch!, hui!, puh!, uff!, pff!, phh! hü!, hott!, ...**

ONOMATOPOEIA (LAUTMALENDE PARTIKEL)

Onomatopoeia particles are imitated sounds or noises which you usually find in comics.

For example: *kikeriki, wau, wuff, miau, quak, peng, bumm, boing, tatütata, ticktack; plumps, klirr, schwupps, zack, ruckzuck, puff, dong, klong, ratsch, hui, bums, rums, fump, blub-blub, schnipp, hatschi,...*

SUMMARY

- There are many different types of particles.
- The most important ones are intensifying, focus, and modal particles
- Probably particles do exist in your native language too, but the German language uses them very intensively.
- They never count as position.
- We cannot ask for them.
- You can find information about modal particles in Adverbs L6.

TASK



Native Language Check

- Check if your language uses particles!
- Focus on intensifying, focus, and modal particles. The others might exist for sure!

ADVERBS

ADVERBS L6 – MODAL PARTICLES (MODALPARTIKEL)

What are Modal Particles?	87
Use of “vielleicht”	87
Use of “ja”	87
Use of “eigentlich”	87
Use of “denn”	88
Use of “dich”	88
Use of “mal”	88
Use of “eben/halt”	88
Use of “wohl”	89
Use of “schon” & “ruhig”	89
Use of “bloß” & “nur”	89
Task	89



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/adverbsL6/>

WHAT ARE MODAL PARTICLES?

Modal particles are also known as "shading particles" because they show different shades of meanings of other words. They are mainly used in spoken language and show the speaker's feelings, attitude and mood. They can strengthen or weaken the statement. They are usually in the middle of the sentence after the verb and any pronouns.

USE OF "VIELLEICHT"

Expresses uncertainty or annoyance:

- „Ist das **vielleicht** ein Ufo?“
- „Das ist **vielleicht** beschissen gelaufen!“

USE OF "JA"

A single modal particle can often have several very different meanings:

1. It expresses that everything happened as expected:

- „Das musste **ja** passieren.“

2. It expresses surprise or wonder:

- „Das war **ja** einfach.“

3. It expresses a warning:

- „Mach das **ja** nie wieder.“

USE OF "EIGENTLICH"

1. To politely change the subject:

- „Was kommt heute **eigentlich** im Fernsehen?“

2. When you are contemplating something specific, in reality, in actuality:

- „Ein neues Auto ist **eigentlich** zu teuer.“
- „**Eigentlich** kennt sie sich mit Computern nicht aus.“

3. Normally, theoretically, a disappointed surprise:

- „**Eigentlich** müsste die Uhr jetzt funktionieren.“

USE OF "DENN"

1. To make requests or demands more friendly:

- „Wie spät ist es **denn** (eigentlich)?“
- "It is often combined with "eigentlich" to make it even friendlier."

2. Negative Surprise:

- „Was hast du **denn** gemacht?“
- „Was habt ihr **denn** wieder gemacht?“

USE OF "DICH"

1. To make requests or demands sound more friendly:

- „Vielleicht holen wir **doch** lieber einen Elektriker?“

2. To make an accusation or explanation → unfriendly

- „Ruf **doch** endlich den Elektriker an.“
- „Ich hab ihn **doch** schon angerufen.“

3. To remind the listener of something that is already known:

- „Darüber haben wir **doch** gestern gesprochen.“

USE OF "MAL"

To make requests or questions friendlier:

- „Komm **mal** hier her!“
- „Schaltest du **mal** bitte das Licht an?“

USE OF "EBEN/HALT"

Expresses resignation or acceptance of something. It can't be changed or you don't want to talk about it anymore.

- „Das funktioniert **halt** nicht! Akzeptier es!“
- „Das kann man **eben** nicht ändern.“

There is no difference between "eben" and "halt"; they are synonyms.

USE OF "WOHL"

Expresses uncertainty:

- „Ob das **wohl** richtig ist?“
- „Wo ist Anna?“ – „Die wird **wohl** zu Hause sein.“

USE OF "SCHON" & "RUHIG"

Expresses encouragement. The listener should think positively.

- „Das wird **schon** wieder!“
- „Versuch es **ruhig**! Du kannst nichts verlieren!“

They are not 100% synonyms, but they express the same idea.

USE OF "BLOß" & "NUR"

Expresses a warning or strengthens a command:

- „Stell die Vase **bloß** wieder hin!“
- „Überlege dir **nur** gut, was du sagst!“

There is no difference between "bloß" and "nur", they are synonyms.

TASK



- Listen carefully to your German-speaking friends.
- Try to understand when and how they use particles.
- If you aren't sure whether to use one, DON'T use it in serious situations! **If you use them in the wrong way, a polite sentence can turn into an insult!**
- Practice them with your friends! Not with your boss!
- And LISTEN, LISTEN, LISTEN! But, first, you have to get the feeling of when and how to use them.

ARTICLES

ARTICLES L1 – WHAT ARE ARTICLES?

Articles in English	91
Where do we live find Articles?	91
What information does the Article contain?	91
Different Types of Articles	91
Task	92



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/articlesL1/>

ARTICLES IN ENGLISH

The definite article: "the" – German: der, die, das, ...

Indefinite articles: "a" / "an" – German: ein, eine, ...

WHERE DO WE LIVE FIND ARTICLES?

In general, you will find an article together with almost every noun.

→ The article comes before the noun.

- „Das ist der Mann.“
- „Dort steht die Frau.“
- „Das Kind hat eine Puppe.“

WHAT INFORMATION DOES THE ARTICLE CONTAIN?

In English – definite or indefinite (this specific noun or one in general)

In German:

- the gender (der, die, das – masculine, feminine, neuter)
- the number (singular or plural)
- the case (nominative, accusative, dative, genitive)

DIFFERENT TYPES OF ARTICLES

Definite and Indefinite Articles

- „Das Haus gehört einem Mann.“

The Zero Article (= no article)

- „Das Haus ist aus **Holz**.“

Possessive Articles

- „Das ist mein Haus.“

The Negative Article "Kein"

- „Das ist kein Haus.“

TASK



- Think about articles in your own language!
- Are they the same?
- It will also help you learn the German language if you understand the grammar of your native language!

ARTICLES

ARTICLES L2 – DEFINITE ARTICLES

Examples and Comparison.....	94
The Use of Definite Articles	94
Declension – Definite Articles in all Cases.....	94
Summary	95



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/articlesL2/>

EXAMPLES AND COMPARISON

- „**Die** Frau wäscht **die** dreckigen Sachen.“ – The woman is washing the dirty cloths.
- „**Das** Kind hat **das** Spielzeug kaputt gemacht.“ – The child has broken the toy.
- „**Der** Mann geht in **den** Wald.“ – The man goes/walks into the forest.
- „**Die** Politiker sprechen über **die** neuen Gesetze.“ – The politicians are talking about the new laws.

THE USE OF DEFINITE ARTICLES

You use definite articles when talking about something specific.

→ The noun is unique. You can say exactly what you are talking about.

- „**Der** Hund holt **die** Zeitung.“ – The dog gets the newspaper.

You use definite articles when talking about something generally known or already explicitly mentioned.

- „**Der** Himmel ist blau.“
(Everybody knows what "Himmel" is.)
- „Das ist **der** Mann, den ich gestern getroffen habe.“
(That particular man, not just anybody.)

DECLENSION – DEFINITE ARTICLES IN ALL CASES

	Nominative	Accusative	Dative	Genitive
Masculine	der Mann	den Mann	dem Mann	des Mannes
Feminine	die Frau	die Frau	der Frau	der Frau
Neuter	das Kind	das Kind	dem Kind	des Kindes
Plural	die Eltern	die Eltern	den Eltern	der Eltern

In English: All “the”

SUMMARY

We use definite articles in German like in English:

- for specific things,
- for things that were already mentioned, and
- for things that are generally known.

Different from English:

- In German, you have to decline the articles.

ARTICLES

ARTICLES L3 – INDEFINITE ARTICLES

Examples and Comparison.....	97
The Use of Indefinite Articles	97
Declension – Indefinite Articles in all Cases.....	97
Summary	97
Task.....	98



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/articlesL3/>

EXAMPLES AND COMPARISON

- „**Eine** Frau wäscht **eine** Jacke.“ – A woman is washing a jacket.
- „**Ein** Kind isst **ein** Stück Schokolade.“ – A child is eating a piece of chocolate.
- „**Ein** Mann geht in **ein** Haus.“ – A man goes/walks into a house.
- „**Ein** Politiker spricht über **ein** neues Gesetz.“ – A politician is talking about a new law.

THE USE OF INDEFINITE ARTICLES

You use indefinite articles when talking about something unspecified (like in English).

→ The noun is not unique. It is one out of many.

- „Der Hund holt **einen** Stock.“
There are many. It could be any stick (=Stock).

LIKE IN ENGLISH: There is no indefinite article in plural:

- „Der Hund holt Stöcke.“

DECLENSION – INDEFINITE ARTICLES IN ALL CASES

	Nominative	Accusative	Dative	Genitive
Masculine	ein Mann	einen Mann	einem Mann	eines Mannes
Feminine	eine Frau	eine Frau	einer Frau	einer Frau
Neuter	ein Kind	ein Kind	einem Kind	eines Kindes
Plural	- Eltern	- Eltern	- Eltern	- Eltern

SUMMARY

The indefinite article in German is similar to English:

- We talk about something unspecified.
- It could be one out of many.
- There is no indefinite article in the plural form.

TASK



- Check how and when you use definite and indefinite articles in your own language! (In case it isn't English.)
- Is it the same? Probably!

ARTICLES

ARTICLES L4 – THE NEGATIVE ARTICLE: "KEIN"

What is the Negative Article "kein"?.....	100
The Use of the Negative Article "kein"	100
Declension – "kein" in all Cases.....	100
Summary	100
Task	101



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/articlesL4/>

WHAT IS THE NEGATIVE ARTICLE "KEIN"?

If we talk about the negative article, we talk about the negation "kein". The negative article only comes before the noun (like all the other articles).

Nouns without articles and nouns with indefinite articles can be negated with "kein".

THE USE OF THE NEGATIVE ARTICLE "KEIN"

Nouns without articles ("Nullartikel") and nouns with indefinite articles are negated with "kein."

- „Ich habe Geld.“ – „Ich habe **kein** Geld.“ – I have **no** money.
- „Ich habe ein Auto.“ – „Ich habe **kein** Auto.“ – I have **no** car.

DECLENSION – "KEIN" IN ALL CASES

"Kein" gets the same endings as possessive or indefinite articles:

	Nominative	Accusative	Dative	Genitive
Masculine	kein Mann	keinen Mann	keinem Mann	keines Mannes
Feminine	keine Frau	keine Frau	keiner Frau	keiner Frau
Neuter	kein Kind	kein Kind	keinem Kind	keines Kindes
Plural	keine Sterne	keine Sterne	keinen Sternen	keiner Sterne

All endings are the same as the endings of the definite articles.

The only difference is that nominative masculine, nominative neuter, and accusative neuter have no ending at all.)

SUMMARY

We use the negative article "kein" when we want to negate:

- nouns without articles (the zero article) and
- nouns with indefinite articles (ein, eine, ...)

TASK



- Check if you see the pattern behind the different endings for all the cases
- You don't have to learn dozens of different tables with different endings! 😊

ARTICLES

ARTICLES L5 – THE ZERO ARTICLE

What is the Zero Article?.....	103
The Use of the Zero Article.....	103
Advice / Task	105



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/articlesL5/>

WHAT IS THE ZERO ARTICLE?

In general, most nouns use articles.

But there are exceptions.

In some cases, nouns come without articles. When there is no article, we call that the zero article.

→ **No Article = Zero Article**

THE USE OF THE ZERO ARTICLE

1. The Indefinite Article in Plural Form:

- „Dort steht ein Auto.“
Plural: „Dort stehen **Autos**.“
- „Hast du einen Stift?“ 2
Plural: „Hast du **Stifte**?“



Advice:

Like in English, there is no plural of the indefinite article → indefinite things do not get an article in plural (= Zero Article).

2. We use the zero article for names of people and companies that don't have an adjective in front of them:

No adjective:

- „Ich arbeite mit **Max**.“
- „Ich arbeite bei **Siemens**.“

With adjective:

- „Ich arbeite mit **dem arroganten** Max.“

3. After size, weight or number descriptions:

- „Ich möchte bitte eine Tasse **Tee**.“
- „Die Brauerei braut jeden Tag 10.000 Liter **Bier**.“
- „Ich hätte gern 100g **Mortadella**.“
- „Ich möchte gern 10 **Eier**.“

4. For nationalities and languages:

- „Olga ist **Russin**.“
- „Sie will **Deutsch** lernen.“
- „Pedro ist **Spanier**.“
- „Er spricht schon **Deutsch**.“
- „Marie ist **Schweizerin**.“
- „Marie lernt **Französisch**.“

5. Cities, continents, and most countries that don't have an adjective in front of them:

- „Er kommt aus **Berlin**.“
- „Deutschland liegt in **Europa**.“

But: „Ich komme aus der Schweiz.“

(Switzerland is an exception and always requires an article in front of it.)

- „Er kommt aus dem schönen Berlin.“

6. For professions, when using "werden", "sein", "als":

- „Olga ist **Architektin**.“
- „Jan arbeitet als **Deutschlehrer**.“
- „Pedro will **Ingenieur** werden.“

But: „Der Arzt macht einen Fehler.“

(The person himself is in focus, not the profession in general.)

7. For materials and substances used in a general context:

Materials and substances like milk, paper, water, iron, gold...

- „Mein Schreibtisch ist aus **Holz**.“
- „**Papier** wird aus **Holz** hergestellt.“

But: „Das Papier im Drucker ist alle.“

(Specifically, your paper stock. We are talking about the object "paper", not about the material.)

ADVICE / TASK



- Many rules might look quite complicated at first glance.
- **But:** Most languages have a zero article. For example, the rules for the German and English zero articles are 99% the same. German is different from Latin languages as they have an indefinite plural article. But the rest is the same! So check it in your own language. The rules are probably similar!

ARTICLES

ARTICLES L6 – THE POSSESSIVE ARTICLES

What is the possessive Article?	107
The Different Forms of the Possessive Articles.....	107
Declension of Possessive Articles.....	107
Analysis of an Example:.....	108
More Examples.....	108



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/articlesL6/>

WHAT IS THE POSSESSIVE ARTICLE?

They indicate who owns what and thus show ownership and affiliation.

Possessive articles come before the noun.

Example:

- „Das ist Anna. **ihre** Katze spielt im Garten.“

THE DIFFERENT FORMS OF THE POSSESSIVE ARTICLES

The form of the possessive article depends on the Person it is referring to:

- „Mein Opa ist 80 Jahre alt.“
- „Sein Bruder ist 75 Jahre alt.“
- „Wie alt ist dein Opa?“

Only the reference person (the “owner”) determines which possessive articles we use, not the case, gender, or number.

Owner	Possessive Article	Noun
ich	→ mein (my)	Opa
du	→ dein (your)	Opa
er	→ sein (his)	Opa
es	→ sein (its)	Opa
sie	→ ihr (her)	Opa
wir	→ unser (our)	Opa
ihr	→ euer (your)	Opa
sie/Sie	→ ihr/Ihr (their/your)	Opa

DECLENSION OF POSSESSIVE ARTICLES

Possessive articles have to be declined, just like all articles.

- The declension is based on the noun that comes after the possessive article (what is "owned" or what "belongs" to someone)
- Declension is the same for all possessive articles (**meinem**, **deinem**, **seinem**, **ihrem**, **unserem**,...) and is based on the gender, case, and number of the noun that is "owned" (and that comes after the possessive article).

	Nominative	Accusative	Dative	Genitive
Masculine	mein Mann	meinen Mann	meinem Mann	meines Mannes
Feminine	meine Frau	meine Frau	meiner Frau	meiner Frau
Neuter	mein Kind	mein Kind	meinem Kind	meines Kindes
Plural	meine Sterne	meine Sterne	meinen Sternen	meiner Sterne

Exception:

eu**er** Vater → eu**ren** Vater

If you add an ending to "ever", you must drop the "e" in the middle.

ANALYSIS OF AN EXAMPLE:

„Das ist Anna. **Ihr** **e** Katze spielt im Garten.“



The person of reference is Anna.

→ **Possessive:** 3. Person Feminine → ihr

"Katze" is the noun to whom the article belongs to.

→ **Number:** Singular (only one cat)

→ **Gender:** Feminine (die Katze)

→ **Case:** Nominative

→ **Nominative + Singular + feminine** = **ihre**

MORE EXAMPLES

- A: „Das ist Jens. **Sein** Auto steht vor **unserem** Haus.“ – This is Jens. **His** car is in front of **our** house.
- B: „Ist Jens **dein** Freund?“ – Is Jens **your** friend?
- A: „Ja, Jens ist **mein** Freund. Er holt mich ab.“ – Yes, Jens is **my** friend. He will pick me up.
- B: „Na dann, viel Spaß bei **eurem** Ausflug.“ – Ok, then have fun on **your** trip.

ARTICLES L7 – DECLENSION (IS SO EASY) GUIDE

You don't have to learn dozens of different endings!

This is all you need: Definite Articles

	Nominative	Accusative	Dative	Genitive
Masculine	der Mann	den Mann	dem Mann	des Mannes
Feminine	die Frau	die Frau	der Frau	der Frau
Neuter	das Kind	das Kind	dem Kind	des Kindes
Plural	die Eltern	die Eltern	den Eltern	der Eltern

I am pretty sure you know this table already, don't you?

Why do you need only that one?

If you haven't found the pattern yet... I will show you right now!



Let's have a look at the other articles.

The Indefinite Articles

	Nominative		Accusative		Dative		Genitive	
Masculine	der	ein	den	einen	dem	einem	des	eines
Feminine	die	eine	die	eine	der	einer	der	einer
Neuter	das	ein	das	ein	dem	einem	des	eines
Plural	die	-	die	-	den	-	der	-

Do you see the pattern?

You only have to know which form does not use an ending at all

So, let's have a look at the other articles!

The Negative Article

	Nominative		Accusative		Dative		Genitive	
Masculine	der	kein	den	keinen	dem	kein em	des	keines
Feminine	die	keine	die	keine	der	keiner	der	keiner
Neuter	das	kein	das	kein	dem	kein em	des	keines
Plural	die	keine	die	keine	den	kein en	der	keiner

The Possessive Articles

	Nominative		Accusative		Dative		Genitive	
Masculine	der	mein	den	meinen	dem	mein em	des	meines
Feminine	die	meine	die	meine	der	meiner	der	meiner
Neuter	das	mein	das	mein	dem	mein em	des	meines
Plural	die	meine	die	meine	den	mein en	der	meiner

**Advice:**

You should see the pattern by now. Nominative masculine, nominative neuter, and accusative neuter do not get an ending. For all the others, add the ending of the definite article!

Even most pronouns follow this rule:

Possessive Pronouns

	Nominative		Accusative		Dative		Genitive	
Masculine	der	meiner	den	meinen	dem	mein em	des	meines
Feminine	die	meine	die	meine	der	meiner	der	meiner
Neuter	das	mein(e)s	das	mein(e)s	dem	mein em	des	meines
Plural	die	meine	die	meine	den	mein en	der	meiner

Relative and Demonstrative Pronouns

	Nominative		Accusative		Dative		Genitive	
Masculine	der	der	den	den	dem	dem	des	dessen
Feminine	die	die	die	die	der	der	der	deren
Neuter	das	das	das	das	dem	dem	des	dessen
Plural	die	die	die	die	den	denen	der	deren

Except for genitive and dative plural, all forms are the same. And even there, you have the definite article as the base, and you just have to add an extra "-en".

Personal Pronouns

	Nominative		Accusative		Dative	
Masculine	der	er	den	ihn	dem	ihm
Feminine	die	sie	die	sie	der	ihr
Neuter	das	es	das	es	dem	ihm
Plural	die	sie	die	sie	den	ihnen

Even there, you can see the obvious pattern!

Your big question right now: Does it work for Adjective Declension?

YES, IT DOES!!!!

But it's a bit more complex there, so check out my explanations about adjective declension!

Nouns

NOUNS – L1: WHAT ARE NOUNS?

Nouns – Definition.....	113
Nouns – Characteristics	113
Task	113



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/nounsL1/>

NOUNS – DEFINITION

Oxford dictionary:

"A word (other than a pronoun) used to identify any of a class of people, places, or things (common noun), or to name a particular one of these (proper noun)."

Easier:

A noun is a word that describes a specific thing, set of things or creature.

Examples: Tommy, man, dog, lamp, computer, weather, light...

NOUNS – CHARACTERISTICS

Nouns use articles:

- "das Haus"
- "die Lampe"
- "das Wetter"

You have to write all nouns with a capital letter at all times and not just at the beginning of a sentence.

Compound nouns must be written together

- "der Führerschein" – der Führer + der Schein (driver's license)
- "die Wasserflasche" – die Flasche + das Wasser (water bottle)

TASK

**Native Language Check:**

1. Compare it with your own language!
2. Study the nouns in your own language.
3. If you understand how it works in your own language, it is easier to know how it works in another language.

Vocabulary Task:

- Write down a list of everything that is in your room/apartment/house.
- Use my sample vocabulary list for German nouns that I provide in the bonus section. → It's a proven method for learning German vocabulary.

Nouns

NOUNS – L2: GERMAN GENDER

How many Genders do we use in German?	115
Examples.....	115
How do we determine the Gender?	115
Masculine Nouns	116
Feminine Nouns	117
Neuter Nouns.....	118
How do Germans determine the Gender?.....	118
Compound Nouns	119
Gender of Plural Nouns	119
Too many rules for you?	119
Task	119



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/nounsL2/>

HOW MANY GENDERS DO WE USE IN GERMAN?

The German language has three different genders:

- masculine (der)
- feminine (die)
- neuter (das)

In English, all of those are "the".

But the English language uses genders as well: for people!

→ That's why you use "he", "she" and "it".

German does the same, but things can be masculine ("der") or feminine ("die") as well. Also, some nouns that describe a person are neuter ("das").



EXAMPLES

- "der Mann" – the man
- "die Frau" – the woman
- "das Kind" – the child
- "das Baby" – the baby
- "die Flasche" – the bottle
- "der Eimer" – the bin



HOW DO WE DETERMINE THE GENDER?

The most important rule:

There is no universal rule that works in every situation. In German, you can't tell the gender just by looking at the noun. Always learn the article along with the noun!

(Use my vocabulary list sample to prevent difficulties in the future.)

There are no rules, BUT:

There are specific characteristics of the noun that can help you determine the article.

These are related to the meaning or the ending of the noun.

MASCULINE NOUNS

Characteristics	Examples
Male people	der Mann, der Student, der Vater, ...
Occupations	der Architekt, der Arzt, der Mechaniker, ...
Cardinal Directions	der Westen, der Osten, der Norden, ...
Days, Months, Seasons	der Montag, der März, der Winter, ...
Most rivers outside of Germany	der Nil, der Amazonas, der Ganges, ...
Most mountains	der Kilimandscharo, der Mt. Everest, der Vesuv, ...
Precipitation	der Regen, der Schnee, der Hagel, ...
Nouns that end in: -ling	der Liebling, der Schmetterling, der Lehrling, ...
Nouns that end in: -ismus	der Kommunismus, der Kapitalismus, der Hinduismus, ...
Nouns that end in: -ich	der Teppich, der Kranich, der Deich, ...

More endings that (usually!) indicate masculine nouns: -ig, -ent, -ier, -ist, -or, -ör, -iker, -ast, -eur.

These are the most important ones, but it's still the best to always learn the article together with the meaning of the word.

FEMININE NOUNS

Characteristics	Examples
Female People	die Frau, die Lehrerin, die Schwester, ...
Occupations that end in -in or -frau	die Architektin, die Sekretärin, die Hotelfachfrau, ...
Most rivers within Germany	die Elbe, die Donau, die Isar, ...
The names of flowers, ships/boats, and motorcycles	die Orchidee, die Titanic, die Kawasaki, ...
Nouns that end in: -heit	die Einheit, die Freiheit, die Gesundheit, ...
Nouns that end in: -keit	die Geschwindigkeit, die Möglichkeit, die Einsamkeit, ...
Nouns that end in: -schaft	die Wirtschaft, die Landschaft, die Freundschaft, ...
Nouns that end in: -ion	die Revolution, die Tradition, die Position, ...
Nouns that end in: -ung	die Endung, die Verbindung, die Beziehung, ...

More endings that (usually) indicate feminine nouns: -anz, -ik, -tät, -ur, -ei, -sis, -ive, -ade.

These are the most important ones, but it's still the best to always learn the article together with the meaning of the word.

NEUTER NOUNS

Characteristics	Examples
Colors and the names of hotels	das Rot, das Hilton, das Blau, ...
Nominalization (creating a noun from a verb)	das Rennen, das Laufen, das Rechnen, ...
Nouns that end in: -chen	das Mädchen, das Brötchen, das Zeichen, ...
Nouns that end in: -lein	das Fräulein, das Blümlein, das Männlein, ...
Nouns that end in: -ment	das Instrument, das Experiment, das Apartment, ...
Nouns that end in: -ing	das Doping, das Timing, das Training, ...

More endings that (usually) indicate neuter nouns: -tel, -in, -tum, -um, -ment, -o, -ma, -ett.

These are the most important ones, but it's still the best to always learn the article together with the meaning of the word.

HOW DO GERMANS DETERMINE THE GENDER?

Native German speakers know which gender they have to use because it just "sounds right".

Unfortunately, you aren't a native German speaker.

Germans who aren't German teachers wouldn't be able to tell you any of the rules I taught you in this lesson!

Short Summary - We determine the gender by:

- Biological gender,
- Endings,
- Meaning, sound, and other characteristics.

COMPOUND NOUNS

If a noun contains multiple other words that are getting compound, the last noun determines the gender of the compound word.

Examples:

- "der Schrank + **die** Tür" = "**die** Schranktür"
- "das Bett + **die** Decke" = "**die** Bettdecke"
- "die Hand + **das** Tuch" = "**das** Handtuch"

GENDER OF PLURAL NOUNS

FINALLY, GOOD NEWS!!!**There is only one form in plural.**

- "der Ball" → "**die** Bälle"
- "die Frau" → "**die** Frauen"
- "das Haus" → "**die** Häuser"



TOO MANY RULES FOR YOU?

Take a look at the next page!

My article guide will help you guess 75% of all articles correctly without using a dictionary!

TASK



Take my vocabulary list sample for nouns and write down your new words by filling in all the information in the list. (Only if you aren't doing it already!)

Nouns

NOUNS - L3: ARTICLE GUIDE

Do you have Problems with the German Articles?	121
The Article Guide	122
Follow this Plan	122

Guess 75% of all Articles Correctly



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/nounsL3/>

DO YOU HAVE PROBLEMS WITH THE GERMAN ARTICLES?

There are dozens of different endings, meanings, and other things that show you the correct gender. Are you having trouble memorizing all of them? No Problem!

I didn't do anything special that another teacher couldn't do as well! I just simplified it and broke it down to the most basic and ordinary stuff. If you know all the rules for feminine and neuter nouns, you will get a much higher percentage than 75%!

But with just this basic article guide, you will get around 75% of ordinary, everyday words - with only 9 endings to learn!



ATTENTION.

It would be best if you only use the article guide for spoken language. But, if you have the time, plus the internet or a dictionary close to you, always check it! Write every single noun in your vocabulary list with the article - never without!

THE ARTICLE GUIDE

The actual percentages* for the 3 genders in German		
der	die	das
41%	35%	24%

I based the article guide on the percentages above and the most important rules from
Nouns – L2: German Gender.

FOLLOW THIS PLAN

1. **All people** and **almost all animals** are masculine and therefore use **"der"**
(Exception: You are explicitly speaking about a woman. → Ends in "-in" or "-frau"
or you are talking about a female animal.)
2. For the endings **"-chen"**, **"-lein"**, and **"-ment"**, use **"das"**.
3. For the endings **"-e"**, **"-heit"**, **"-keit"**, **"-ung"**, **"-schaft"** and **"-ion"** use **"die"**.
4. **For all other words, guess masculine ("der")!**

That's it! You "just" have to learn 3 neuter endings, 6 feminine endings, and make sure you use "der" if you talk about a person, except of when it's specifically a woman. For everything else, guess "der", and you will get 75% correct. You will get even more accurate if you know more rules from Nouns – L2: German Gender.

PS: You don't have to learn the rules for masculine nouns anymore! That's because you guess masculine anyways if it doesn't fit the rules of the article trick. So this trick isn't about being perfect 100% of the time. Instead, it should encourage you not to be so scared when dealing with articles in German!

Nouns

NOUNS – L4: PLURAL NOUNS IN GERMAN

Plural – Introduction	124
Plural with “-N/-EN”	124
Plural with “-E”	125
Plural with “-R/-ER”	125
Plural with “-S”	126
Plural without an Ending	126
Plural of Foreign Words	127
No Plural form Possible	127
No Singular form Possible	127
Summary	128



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/nounsL4/>

PLURAL – INTRODUCTION

- **Good news first:**

You don't have to decide between masculine, feminine, or neuter in the plural anymore: **THERE IS ONLY ONE FORM.**

- **Bad news:**

There are different plural endings: "-n/-en", "-r/-er", "-e", and "-s". There is even the possibility that the noun doesn't change at all; you just have to change the article.

And again: **there is no universal rule that fits for all words.**



Advice:

Write the plural form together with the noun on another line in your vocabulary list. Use my sample list!

PLURAL WITH "-N/-EN"

Masculine nouns that end in "-ent", "-ant", "-and", "-or", "-ist":

- "der Studente" – "die Studenten"
- "der Poliziste" – "die Polizisten"

Feminine nouns that end in "-in", "-ion", "-ik", "-ung", "-tät", "-schaft", "-keit", "-heit":

- "die Universität" – "die Universitäten"
- "die Organisation" – "die Organisationen"

99% of all nouns that end in "-e":

- "die Flasche" – "die Flaschen"
- "die Tasse" – "die Tassen"



ATTENTION

For nouns that end in "-in", the "n" is doubled.

Example: "die Kellnerin" – "die Kellnerinnen"

PLURAL WITH "-E"

Many masculine nouns:

- "der Baum" – "die Bäume"
- "der König" – "die Könige"

Many monosyllabic feminine nouns:

- "die Nacht" – "die Nächte"
- "die Hand" – "die Hände"



ATTENTION

For feminine nouns with a, o, u, always add an umlaut (ä, ö, ü).

For masculine nouns, usually, add an umlaut (but not always).

PLURAL WITH "-R/-ER"

Many neuter and monosyllabic nouns:

In the plural, we add an umlaut (usually).

- "das Haus" – "die Häuser"
- "das Kind" – "die Kinder"



ATTENTION

Feminine nouns NEVER have the ending "-r"/"-er" for the plural form.

For feminine nouns with a, o, u, we always add an umlaut (ä, ö, ü).

PLURAL WITH "-S"

All nouns that end in a, i, o, u, or y:

- "das Sofaa" – "die Sofass"
- "das Autoo" – "die Autoss"
- "die Omii" – "die Omis"
- "das Hobbyy" – "die Hobbys"

Many foreign words:

- "das Team" – "die Teamss"
- "der Job" – "die Jobss"

Family names:

- "die Meiers" (= Familie Meier)
- "die Müllers" (= Familie Müller)

PLURAL WITHOUT AN ENDING

Masculine and neuter words with the endings "-el", "-er" and "en".

If we don't add an ending, then an umlaut is usually required for the letters a, o and u.

- "der Apfel" – "**die** Äpfel"
- "der Vater" – "**die** Väter"
- "das Brötchen" – "**die** Brötchen"

**ATTENTION**

Feminine nouns ending with "-el" form their plural with "n."

Example: Die Kartoffel – die Kartoffeln

PLURAL OF FOREIGN WORDS

Words taken from English usually end in "s" in the plural form.

Words taken from Latin or Greek often have a unique form:

- "das Museum" – "die **Museen**"
- "das Praktikum" – "die **Praktika**"

NO PLURAL FORM POSSIBLE

Some words do not have a plural form. They have a singular form only:

- "**das Obst**" → no plural form possible (Fruits)
- "**die Milch**" → no plural form possible (Milk)
- "**der Durst**" → no plural form possible (Thirst)

The singular word already talks about a group of something, or it is uncountable.

(Pay attention because uncountable nouns in English are not always uncountable in German – Lucky for you, it's way more straightforward in German than in English.)

NO SINGULAR FORM POSSIBLE

Some words do not have a singular form. They only have a plural form:

- "**die Leute**" → no singular form possible (People)
- "**die Eltern**" → no singular form possible (Parents)
- "**die Ferien**" → no singular form possible (Vacation)

Those words can't have a singular form due to their meaning.

SUMMARY

- In the plural, it doesn't really matter whether they are masculine, feminine, or neuter).
- You form the plural form with the endings "-e/-en", "-r/-er", "-e", "-s", or even just by changing the article in front.
- Some foreign words use a unique plural form.
- Some words don't have a plural form.
- Some words don't have a singular form.

**Tip:**

Feminine Nouns: usually "-en", "-n"

Masculine Nouns: usually "-e"

Neuter Nouns: usually "-er"

Masculine and Neuter Nouns that end in "-el", "-en", "-er": no ending

If you follow this tip, you will have an excellent chance to guess the plural correctly. But unfortunately, it doesn't always work. That's why it's essential to:

Always write down the plural form in your vocabulary list!

Nouns

NOUNS – L5: COMPOUND NOUNS

When do we use Compound Nouns?	130
Noun + Noun	130
Verb + Noun	131
Adjective / Adverb + Noun.....	131
Which Gender and Plural Form?	131



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/nounsL5/>

WHEN DO WE USE COMPOUND NOUNS?

If we talk about one "thing" with several characteristics, we usually use compound nouns.

Therefore, we can combine all major classes of words:

- Noun + Noun: "das Haus" + "die Tür" = **die Haustür**
- Verb + Noun: "schreiben" + "der Tisch" = **der Schreibtisch**
- Adjective + Noun: "rot" + "der Wein" = **der Rotwein**
- Adverb + Noun: "zusammen" + "die Arbeit" = **die Zusammenarbeit**

When combining nouns with nouns, you can often do it with a preposition instead, but nevertheless, that's not really common:

- the door of the house / die Tür vom Haus vs. the house door / die Haustür

More examples are on the following pages.

NOUN + NOUN

When we combine two nouns to form a compound noun, the second noun tells you what the object is while the first noun describes that object.

„der Kampfhund“ = „der Kampf“ + „der Hund“



=



+



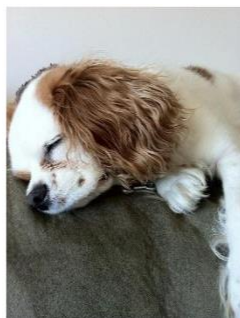
VERB + NOUN

If we put a verb together with a noun, we drop the ending of the verb and put it in front of the noun. The verb gives the noun a specific characteristic.

„das Schlafzimmer“ = „schlafen“ + „das Zimmer“



=



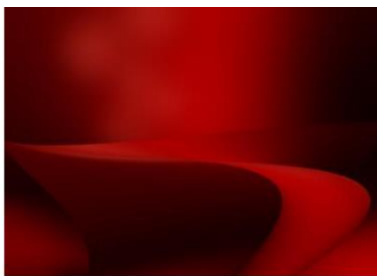
+



ADJECTIVE / ADVERB + NOUN

If we use an adverb or an adjective together with a noun, we insert it in front of the noun. Both versions are rare and describe something in particular.

„der Rotwein“ = „rot“ + „der Wein“



WHICH GENDER AND PLURAL FORM?

For all compound nouns, the last noun always determines the genus and the plural form. Everything that comes before it has no influence on it at all.

- "der Kampf" + "der Hund" = **der** Kampfhund(e) / die Kampfhunde
- "das Wasser" + "die Flasche" = **die** Wasserflasche(n)
- "die Kartoffel" + "der Salat" = **der** Kartoffelsalat(e) / die Kartoffelsalate
- "das Haus" + "die Tür" = **die** Haustür(en)

Nouns

NOUNS – L6: GERMAN CASES

What are Cases?.....	133
How many Cases are there in German?	133
What do the Cases represent?.....	133
Cases in English	134
What can get a Case?.....	134
How to determine the Case?	134
Examples	135
Task	135



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/nounsL6/>

WHAT ARE CASES?

This lesson is all about German cases. So, let's first have a look at what the term "case" actually means.

Definition:

German grammar knows four cases. The nouns written in the sentence have different functions. Depending on the function, the noun has a different case. So the case explains what function the noun has and how it relates to the other words.

HOW MANY CASES ARE THERE IN GERMAN?

German has "only" 4 cases:

- Nominative**
- Accusative**
- Dative**
- Genitive**

WHAT DO THE CASES REPRESENT?

The **Nominative case** is the basic form of nouns and describes the subject of the sentence (the person or thing being acted upon or talked about).

The **Accusative case** represents the direct object of the sentence (what is acted upon).

The **Dative case** represents the indirect object of the sentence (recipient of the direct object).

The **Genitive case** represents possession and ownership.

CASES IN ENGLISH

ENGLISH LANGUAGE USES CASES AS WELL!!!

But you probably didn't realize it!

The gardener's tools = **des** Gärtners Werkzeuge

We add an apostrophe and "s" to show the possessive form. → **Genitive**

I give **him** milk. = Ich gebe **ihm** Milch.

"He" changes to "him" when he receives something. → **Dative**

I like **him**. = Ich mag **ihn**.

"He" changes to "him" if he is the direct object. → **Accusative**

WHAT CAN GET A CASE?

Every noun always has a case.

In addition, all words that belong to the word group of the noun also get the case of the noun. Words that replace a noun (i.e., pronouns) also get the noun's case as well.

→ Nouns, pronouns, articles & adjectives must be changed according to their case.

- „**Der Vater** geht morgen mit **dem Kind** in **die Schule**.“

HOW TO DETERMINE THE CASE?

In principle:

- the noun's function in the sentence
- the verb determines the case
- the preposition determines the case

More about that later!



EXAMPLES

- „**Der Mann** gibt **der Frau die Blumen**.“
- „**Die Frau** bekommt **ein Geschenk**.“
- „**Das Kind** hat **einen Ball**.“

TASK

**Check your native language:**

- Do you use cases in your native language?
- If yes: How do they work? What do you have to change? It will probably be similar...
- If no: sorry. That's some bad luck. But I promise you will understand! It's easier than it looks at first glance.

Nouns

NOUNS – L6.1: THE NOMINATIVE CASE

What is the Nominative Case?	137
Examples	137
Nominative – Declension	137
Use of the Nominative Case	137
Use: Subjects	137
Use: Subject Complements	138
Summary	138



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/nounsL6-1/>

WHAT IS THE NOMINATIVE CASE?

The **nominative case** is the **Basic form** of the noun and describes the **subject** of the sentence (the person or thing that is acting or is talked about).

The subject tells you how to conjugate the verb.

The question for the nominative case is "Wer?" (Who?) or "Was?" (What?)

We use the nominative case also after the verbs "sein", "werden", and "bleiben".

(Warning: In this case, it is NOT the subject!)

EXAMPLES

- „**Das Pferd** ist weiß.“
- „**Der Junge** ist **der beste Schüler** in seiner Klasse!“

NOMINATIVE – DECLENSION

You have to adapt the articles to the case of the noun

	Definite Article	Indefinite Article
Masculine	der Mann	ein Mann
Feminine	die Frau	eine Frau
Neuter	das Kind	ein Kind
Plural	die Eltern	- Eltern

USE OF THE NOMINATIVE CASE

Use: Subjects

- „**Das Pferd** ist weiß.“
- „**Der Mann** schenkt der Frau die Blumen.“
- „Den Ball hat **der Junge** zum Geburtstag bekommen.“

The subject is always in the nominative case! No Exceptions!!!



Advice:

The subject is the person/thing that performs the action or the person/thing we are talking about. It tells you how to conjugate the verb.

Use: Subject Complements

The verbs **sein**, **werden** and **bleiben** use a subject complement. That means we have to use the nominative even though the noun is not the subject.

- „Du **bist ein guter Schüler**.“
- „Er **ist der Beste**!“
- „Du wirst **ein guter Feuerwehrmann werden**.“

The subject complement is not the subject, but it assigns a characteristic of the subject and is therefore in the nominative case as well.

SUMMARY

- The nominative case describes the subject of the sentence.
- It's the basic form.
- We can ask for it with the question words "Wer?" (Who?) or "Was?" (What?)

Nouns

NOUNS – L6.2: THE ACCUSATIVE CASE

What is the Accusative Case?.....	140
Examples	140
Accusative – Declension	140
Use of the Accusative Case	140
Use: Direct Objects	140
Use: Accusative Objects	141
Use: After Prepositions.....	141
Task	142



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/nounsL6-2/>

WHAT IS THE ACCUSATIVE CASE?

The **accusative case** is also known as the **direct object**.

But: We also use the accusative case **after certain verbs and prepositions**.

The direct object is the thing that is acted upon.

The question for the accusative case is: "Wen?" (Who?/Whom?) or "Was?" (What?)

EXAMPLES

- „Der Mann hat **ein Pferd**.“

What does the man have? – **Ein Pferd!**

We use the accusative case always after the verb "haben". That's because "haben" always needs a direct object!

- „Der Junge schenkt einer Freundin **die Blumen**.“

What does the boy give to a friend? – **Die Blumen!**

"Die Blumen" is the direct object, which is acted upon!

ACCUSATIVE – DECLENSION

In the accusative case, we only need to change the articles for masculine nouns!

	Definite Article	Indefinite Article
Masculine	den Mann	einen Mann
Feminine	die Frau	eine Frau
Neuter	das Kind	ein Kind
Plural	die Eltern	- Eltern

USE OF THE ACCUSATIVE CASE

Use: Direct Objects

In sentences with only one object, the object typically takes the accusative case.

Exceptions are when the verb or preposition specifically requires the **nominative**, **genitive**, or **dative** case.

- „Er gibt der Frau **die Blumen**.“

(The flowers are acted upon / used for the action, they don't do anything on their own, and they don't receive anything → direct object)

- „Er schenkt ihr **ein Auto**.“

(The car is acted upon / used for the action, it doesn't do anything on its own, and it doesn't receive anything → direct object)

Use: Accusative Objects

In sentences that have just the subject and a single object, the nouns take the accusative case, unless the preposition or the verb requires the use of nominative, dative, or genitive.

- „Ich habe **ein Eis**.“
- „Er singt **ein Liebeslied**.“
- „Er spielt **den Ball**.“

Most verbs require the object to be in the accusative case. That makes everything pretty easy because, at the same time, it's the direct object of the sentence: it is acted upon / used for the action, it doesn't do anything on its own, and it doesn't receive anything.

→ direct object → **Accusative Case**

Use: After Prepositions

The prepositions "um", "durch", "ohne", "bis", "für", and "gegen" ALWAYS require the noun to be in the accusative case.

- „Er fährt durch **den Tunnel**.“
- „Die Blumen sind für **meine Freundin**.“
- „Der Mann geht um **das Haus**.“

Prepositions don't care whether it's a direct or indirect object or what case the verb requires. It also doesn't matter which case the verb requires. So, if you have a preposition in front of a noun, the preposition determines the case.

**Remember:**

If you have a preposition in front of a noun, none of the other rules apply anymore. All that matters is the preposition. It doesn't matter whether it's a direct or indirect object or if the verb requires a specific case!

The preposition determines the case. ALWAYS!

TASK



- Study the prepositions in your own language!
- Understand what a preposition is in your own language.
- Go to my list of the most important prepositions in German. (Bonus Section)

Nouns

NOUNS – L6.3: THE DATIVE CASE

What is the Dative Case?	144
Examples	144
Dative – Declension	144
Special Characteristics	145
Use of the Dative Case	145
Use: Indirect Objects	145
Use: Dative Objects	146
Use: After Prepositions	146
Task	147



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/nounsL6-3/>

WHAT IS THE DATIVE CASE?

The **dative case** is also known as the **indirect object**.

BUT: We also use the dative case **after certain verbs and prepositions**.

The indirect object is the noun that receives something (which usually is in the **accusative case**).

The question for the dative case is "Wem?" (To whom?) or "Was?" (What?)

EXAMPLES

- „Das Auto gehört **dem Mann**.“

Who does the car belong to? – **Dem Mann!**

The verb "gehören" always requires the dative case.

- „Der Junge schenkt **einer Freundin** die Blumen.“

To whom does the boy give the flowers? – **Einer Freundin!**

"Freundin" is the indirect object. She receives the flowers!

What does the boy give to a friend? – **Die Blumen!**

"Die Blumen" is the direct object, which is acted upon!

DATIVE – DECLENSION

In the dative case, we need to change all articles!

	Definite Article	Indefinite Article
Masculine	dem Mann	einem Mann
Feminine	der Frau	einer Frau
Neuter	dem Kind	einem Kind
Plural	den Eltern	- Eltern

SPECIAL CHARACTERISTICS

When the plural form doesn't end in "s" or "n", the plural form in dative requires an extra "-n" that needs to be added on to the end.

- *die Fahrräder* – *den Fahrrädern*n
- *die Bilder* – *den Bilder*n
- *die Tische* – *den Tischen*n
- *die Autos* – *den Autos* → kein "n"
- *die Frauen* – *den Frauen* → kein "n"

USE OF THE DATIVE CASE

Use: Indirect Objects

In sentences with more than one object, the indirect object is always in the dative case unless the preposition requires the genitive or accusative case.

- „Er gibt **dem Mann** die Schlüssel.“

The person performing the action ("er" → he → subject → **nominative case**) - gives something ("die Schlüssel" → the keys are acted upon → direct object → **accusative case**) to a receiver ("Der Mann" → the man gets something → indirect object → **dative case**).

**Advice:**

The noun in the dative case usually receives something (The noun in the accusative case).

Use: Dative Objects

After certain verbs (verbs with dative complements), the dative always needs to be used. For example, "helfen", "gehören", "zuhören".

- „Ich helfe **dem Mann**.“
- „Das Auto gehört **einem Kollegen**.“
- „Ich höre **meiner Freundin** zu.“

Those verbs require the dative case. The object is still the "direct object", but the verb can only be used with the dative case.

→ **It's the dative case because the verb says so!**

Use: After Prepositions

The prepositions "aus", "bei", "gegenüber", "mit", "nach", "seit", "von" and "zu" are always followed by a noun in **the dative case**.

- „Er kommt aus **dem Haus**.“
- „Du bist bei **einer Freundin**.“
- „Der Mann geht zu **dem Bahnhof**.“



Remember:

Like for the accusative case, if you have a preposition in front of a noun, none of the other rules apply anymore.

All that matters is what the preposition says!

It doesn't matter whether it's a direct or indirect object or if the verb requires a particular case!

The preposition determines the case. ALWAYS!

TASK



- Go to my sample verb vocabulary list in the bonus section.
- I've already written 10 of the most important verbs that require the dative case.
- If you add verbs that require **dative** (or **genitive**), mark them in their color.
- **The colors are visual reminders and will help you to remember if a verb requires a particular case or not.**

Nouns

NOUNS – L6.4: THE GENITIVE CASE

What is the Genitive Case?	149
The Genitive Case – Examples.....	149
Declension in the Genitive Case	149
Special Characteristics of the Genitive Case	149
Use of the Genitive Case	150
Use: To Indicate Belonging Or Possession	150
Noun-Noun Constructions With Proper Nouns	150
Use: After Prepositions.....	151
Use: After Certain Verbs	151
Use: With Certain Adjectives.....	152
Good News for German Students:	152



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/nounsL6-4/>

WHAT IS THE GENITIVE CASE?

The **genitive case** shows belonging or possession.

It is used in noun-noun constructions.

We also use the genitive after certain verbs, prepositions, and adjectives.

The question for the genitive case is "Wessen?" (Whose?)

THE GENITIVE CASE – EXAMPLES

- „Das Pferd **des Reiters** ist weiß.“

→ Whose horse is white? → **Des Reiters!**

→ Noun-noun construction → **Genitive**

- „Während **des Spiels** verletzt er sich.“

The preposition "während" requires **the genitive case** → **des Spiels**

DECLENSION IN THE GENITIVE CASE

We have to change all articles according to the case:

	Definite Article	Indefinite Article
Masculine	des Mann es	eines Mann es
Feminine	der Frau	einer Frau
Neuter	des Kind es	eines Kind es
Plural	der Eltern	- Eltern

SPECIAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE GENITIVE CASE

Nouns that are either masculine or neuter require the ending "s" or "es".

Nouns that end in -s, -ß, -x, -z: ("-es" MUST be used)

- "der Platz" – "des Platz**es**"

Monosyllabic nouns: (Just an "-s" is ok, but "-es" usually sounds better)

- "der Mann" – "des Mann**(e)s**"

For all other nouns: just "-s".

- "der Ventilator" – "des Ventilator**s**"

USE OF THE GENITIVE CASE

Use: To Indicate Belonging or Possession

We show belonging or possession with the help of noun-noun constructions.

„**Das Pferd des Reiters** ist weiß.“



1. Noun = Subject → **Nominative** 2. Noun= Owner of the 1. Noun → **Genitive**



Tip:

You can avoid using the genitive case in noun-noun constructions by adding the preposition "von" between the nouns and putting the second verb in the dative case.

„**Das Pferd des Reiters** ist weiß.“ // The rider's horse is white.

= „**Das Pferd von dem Reiter** ist weiß.“ // The horse of the rider is white.

This is similar to English, where both are possible. Latin languages also use this type of construction with "von".

Noun-Noun Constructions with Proper Nouns

Because there is no article, we have to signal the genitive differently:

- „**Holgers** Pferd ist weiß.“

The proper noun goes to the front and requires the ending "-s".

If the proper noun ends in s, ß, x or z, an apostrophe is needed:

- „**Hans'** Pferd ist weiß.“

Use: After Prepositions

- „Wegen **der Krankheit** kann er nicht arbeiten.“

The preposition "wegen" requires the use of the genitive case.

The most important genitive prepositions are:

- während, wegen, trotz, innerhalb, außerhalb, oberhalb, unterhalb, aufgrund, anstelle, (an)statt



Remember:

Like the accusative case and dative case, the preposition rule always applies no matter which case the verb would typically require.

Use: After Certain Verbs

Something, someone (etwas oder jemanden): gedenken, bedürfen, Herr werden

- „Wir **gedenken** **der Toten**.“
- „Wir **bedürfen** **der Hilfe**.“
- „Wir **werden** **der Situation Herr**.“

To someone, something (jemanden einer Sache): anklagen, bezichtigen, überführen, beschuldigen, verdächtigen

- „Man klagt **ihn** **der Korruption** an.“
- „Man verdächtigt **ihn** **des Verbrechens**.“
- „Man beschuldigt **ihn** **des Verrats**.“

Something (reflexive) (sich einer Sache): brüsten, erinnern, erfreuen, enthalten, schämen

- „Ich erinnere mich **der alten Zeiten**.“
- „Ich schäme mich **meiner schlechten Aussprache**.“
- „Ich erfreue mich **des Lebens**!“

Use: With Certain Adjectives

- bewusst:** „Ich bin mir **meines Fehlers** bewusst.“
fähig: „Du bist **des Mordes** nicht fähig.“
gewiss: „Sie ist sich **des Erfolges** gewiss.“
sicher: „Du kannst **dir meiner Unterstützung** sicher sein!“

Also: "überdrüssig", "verdächtig", "würdig", "bedürftig"

The adjective always comes after the noun and remains in its basic form.

GOOD NEWS FOR GERMAN STUDENTS:

If you are now thinking: How can I learn all this stuff? Adjectives, verbs, prepositions... **Don't worry! The genitive case isn't used very often anymore.**

You can often avoid the use of the genitive (and therefore having to know the genitive rules) by using prepositions instead:

- „Ich erinnere mich **der alten Zeiten**.“ ⇒ „Ich erinnere mich an **die alten Zeiten**.“

We can use the preposition "an" to outsmart the genitive case. The noun then follows the preposition in the accusative case. So the case always depends on which word (here, the preposition) comes before the noun.

You can also avoid the noun-noun constructions by using the preposition "von".

- „Das Pferd **des Reiters** ist weiß.“ → „Das Pferd von **dem Reiter** ist weiß.“



Attention

But be careful: In noun-noun constructions, the genitive is still used since the sentence sounds better when using the genitive case. But both are grammatically correct!

Nouns

NOUNS L6.5 – GUIDE TO THE CORRECT CASE

BASICS

To be able to follow the step-by-step guide, you should have gone through all of the following topics already:

- The Four German Cases (They are: **nominative**, **accusative**, **dative**, and **genitive**)
- Prepositions
- Verbs with Complements

This guide is a summary of all the rules and is easy to use in practice.

There are no exceptions!

Step 1: Where is the subject?



The subject is always in the **nominative case!**

The subject is the most important part of a sentence and is the easiest to find. If you know who or what is performing the action, you, therefore, know the subject. It's in the nominative case.

Our Example:

Er	<i>gibt</i>	dem Mann	die Schlüssel.
Subject	Verb	?	?
Nominative			

"Er" is the subject. "Er" is performing the action!

Step 2: Is there a preposition before the noun?

Prepositions always determine the case. Most prepositions work with just a single case. A few use both the **dative case** and the **accusative case** (so-called two-case prepositions).

- Yes → Jackpot!

The preposition tells us which case we have to use! ALWAYS!

- No → Onward to step 3

Our Example:

<i>Er</i>	<i>gibt</i>	<i>dem Mann</i>	<i>die Schlüssel.</i>
Subject	Verb	?	?
Nominative			

There's NO preposition before the noun!

**Step 3:** Does the verb require a particular case?

Some verbs always require a certain case (verbs with complements)

for example: "sein" → **nominative** // "helfen" → **dative**

- Yes → Then use the case that the verb wants!
- No → Onward to Step 4

Our Example:

<i>Er</i>	<i>gibt</i>	<i>dem Mann</i>	<i>die Schlüssel.</i>
Subject	Verb	?	?
Nominative			

NO!



Step 4: Direct and indirect objects!

You already have learned that the accusative case is the direct object and that the dative case is the indirect object. Surprisingly, this is often the only rule that sticks directly with the German student. But note that it only applies when there is no preposition, and the verb doesn't require a particular case.

- The direct object takes **the accusative case**.
(It is the thing acted upon.)
- The indirect object takes **the dative case**.
(It is the thing that receives the direct object.)

Direct Object → **Accusative**



Indirect Object → **Dative**



<i>Er</i>	<i>gibt</i>	<i>dem Mann</i>	<i>die Schlüssel.</i>
Subject	Verb	Indirect Object	Direct Object
Nominative		Dative	Accusative

Does it work for the **genitive case** as well?

The step-by-step guide works for the genitive case as well. Just add an extra step: Is it a noun-noun-construction? Yes – Genitive No – Continue.

For levels B2 and higher: Remember that some constructions with adjectives can also trigger the genitive case.

Nouns

NOUNS L7 – N-DECLENSION

What does N-Declension mean?	157
When do we use N-Declension?	157
Step by Step: N-Declension – Yes? or No?	158
Summary	159
Exceptions of N-Declension	159



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/nounsL7/>

WHAT DOES N-DECLENSION MEAN?

Some masculine nouns require the so-called n-declension.

These nouns have an extra -(e)n ending in the singular accusative, singular dative, and singular genitive cases. → So, it looks like the plural form. The nominative stays the same!

	Nominative	Accusative	Dative	Genitive
Singular	der Russe	den Russen	dem Russen	des Russen
Plural	die Russen	die Russen	den Russen	der Russen

WHEN DO WE USE N-DECLENSION?

- ✓ Only masculine nouns (exception: "das Herz")
- ✓ The plural form has to end in "-n" or "-en".
- ✓ People or animals
- ✓ Only in accusative, dative, and genitive

→ **ALL CONDITIONS MUST BE FULFILLED**

On the next page, you will find my Step-by-step guide to N-Declension.

STEP BY STEP: N-DECLENSION – YES? OR NO?

Step 1: Is the noun used in the **Accusative**, **Dative**, or **Genitive** case?

No → **no n-declension**

„Der **Franzose** ist freundlich.“ Nominative → No N-Declension

Yes → Onward to STEP 2

„Der **Deutsche** gibt **dem Franzosen** einen **Tipp**.“

Step 2: Is it a person or an animal?

No → **no n-declension**

„Der **Deutsche** gibt **einem Franzosen** einen **Tipp**.“

Yes → Onward to STEP 3

Step 3: Is the noun masculine and singular?

No → **no n-declension**

„Der **Deutsche** gibt **einem Franzosen** einen **Tipp**.“

Yes → Onward to STEP 4

Step 4: Does the noun use an "-n" or "-en" ending for its plural form?

No → **no n-declension**

„Der **Deutsche** gibt **einem Franzosen** einen **Tipp**.“

Yes → You have to use the n-declension

SUMMARY

The noun must take on an "-n" or "-en" ending when:

1. it is masculine
2. it is a person or an animal
3. the plural ends in "-n" or "-en" and
4. it is not in the nominative.

All four conditions

MUST BE fulfilled.

EXCEPTIONS OF N-DECLENSION

This rule works for almost all nouns, but there are a few exceptions:

1. You have to use n-declension for the following nouns (even though not all of the four rules are fulfilled):

- der Automat, die Automaten: den Automaten**n** – dem Automaten**n** – des Automaten**n**
- der Planet, die Planeten: den Planeten**n** – dem Planeten**n** – des Planeten**n**
- der Konsonant, die Konsonanten: den Konsonanten**n** – dem Konsonanten**n** – des Konsonanten**n**
- der Hydrant, die Hydranten: den Hydranten**n** – dem Hydranten**n** – des Hydranten**n**
- das Herz, die Herzen: den Herzen**n** – dem Herzen**n** – des Herzen**n(\$)**

2. You do NOT use n-declension for these nouns (even though all rules are fulfilled):

- der Doktor, die Doktoren: den Doktor – dem Doktor – des Doktors
- der Drachen, die Drachen: den Drachen – dem Drachen – des Drachens (→ the kite)

3. The n-declension is used together with the “genitive - s” for the following nouns:

- der Gedanke, die Gedanken: den Gedanken**n** – dem Gedanken**n** – des Gedanken**ns**
- der Glaube, kein Plural: den Glauben**n** – dem Glauben**n** – des Glaubens**ns**
- der Wille, die Willen: den Willen**n** – dem Willen**n** – des Willens**ns**
- der Frieden, (kein Plural): den Frieden**n** – dem Frieden**n** – des Friedens**ns**
- der Name, die Namen: den Namen**n** – dem Namen**n** – des Namens**ns**

Prepositions

PREPOSITIONS L1 – PREPOSITIONS IN GENERAL

Definition and Use	161
Types of Prepositions	161
Prepositions and Cases	162
Prepositions with Articles.....	162
Examples	162
Task	162



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/prepositionsL1/>

DEFINITION AND USE

Prepositions are also called ratio words. They are invariant and thus never declined. They usually come before the noun or pronoun to which they refer.

That means they cannot stand alone!

- „Die Katze sitzt **auf** der Bank.“



In some cases, their use is not quite simple.

If German is not your native language, the translation will only help you partially because they are probably used differently than in your native language. You should learn which prepositions you have to use in which situation.

There are different types of prepositions: local, modal, temporal, and causal.

The preposition always determines the case of the noun.

TYPES OF PREPOSITIONS

Local Prepositions: related to a location or position

- „Ich komme **aus** Deutschland.“

Temporal Prepositions: related to time or a point in time

- „Ich komme **um** 5 Uhr.“

Modal prepositions: related to the manner

- „Ich komme **mit** dem Auto.“

Causal Prepositions: related to the reason or the goal of an action

- „Ich komme **wegen** dir.“

PREPOSITIONS AND CASES

Besides describing the relationship between the different parts of the sentence, prepositions have a second important task:

Prepositions determine the case of the noun they are related to:

- „Ich komme **aus** dem Haus.“ (Dative because of "aus")
- „Ich fahre **durch** den Tunnel.“ (Accusative because of "durch")

PREPOSITIONS WITH ARTICLES

Sometimes prepositions are combined with a definite article (der, die, das ...).

For these preposition + article combinations, you should always form a contraction:

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| • an + dem = am | • in + das = ins |
| • an + das = ans | • von + dem = vom |
| • bei + dem = beim | • zu + dem = zum |
| • in + dem = im | • zu + der = zur |

EXAMPLES

- „Ich gehe **zum** Bahnhof.“
- „Ich gehe **zu dem** Bahnhof.“
- „Ich bin **im** Bahnhof.“
- „Ich bin **in dem** Bahnhof.“

If the preposition is separated from the article, it is not an article anymore but a demonstrative pronoun. (More in the chapter pronouns)

TASK



- Check your own language! Which prepositions exist in your native language?
- How do you use them?

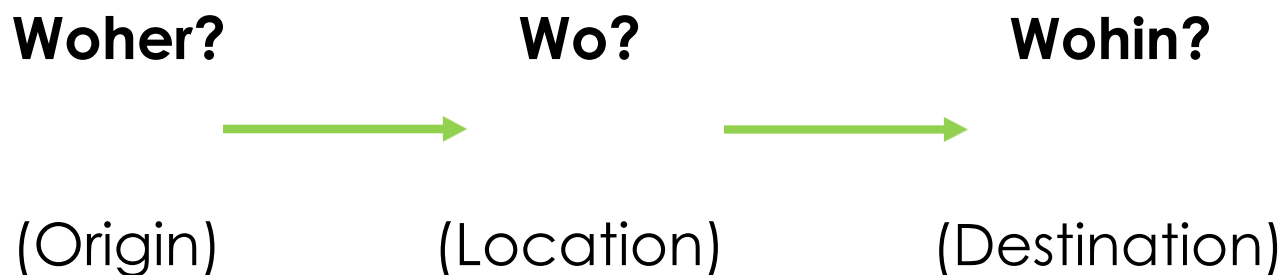
Even though there are probably only limited similarities here, it will help you enormously in learning German if you understand the grammar of your native language.

Prepositions

PREPOSITIONS L2 – LOCAL PREPOSITIONS

Locative prepositions are those that refer to a location or a movement.

We use local prepositions to describe the following situations:



Prepositions

PREPOSITIONS L2.1 – PREPOSITIONS ANSWERING "WO?"

General Info.....	165
The Prepositions	165
Summary	165
Task	165



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/prepositionsL2-1/>

GENERAL INFO

Almost all locative prepositions can answer the question "wo?".

When answering the question "wo?", local prepositions always require the **DATIVE** case!

Attention English speakers: Wohin? (Where to?) can be separated! "Hin" can be attached to the verb as prefix ("Wo hast du dein Handy hingelegt?"). And "Where" + any verb that describes a movement (put, go, ...) will use "wohin?" as a question, different from English. (Where did he go? = Wohin ist er gegangen?)

THE PREPOSITIONS



auf



über



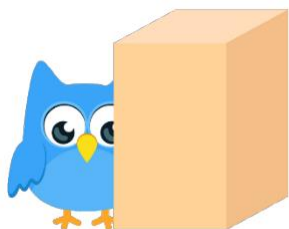
unter



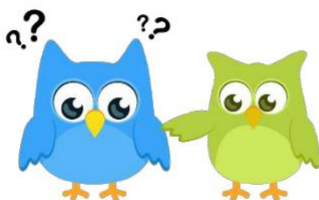
vor



hinter



neben



an/bei



zwischen



in

SUMMARY

- Answering the question "Wo?": all locative prepositions will always require the **DATIVE** case!
- Their use is similar to English; you only have to pay attention when using "an/bei".

TASK



Print out the little owls above and put them on the wall behind your computer / on the fridge / in the bathroom / ...

Prepositions

PREPOSITIONS L2.2 – PREPOSITIONS ANSWERING "WOHER?"

General Info.....	167
The Preposition "aus"	167
The Preposition "von"	167
Summary	168



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/prepositionsL2-2/>

GENERAL INFO

With the preposition "aus" and "von", you express that you come from a certain direction. They, therefore, answer the question "Woher?" (Where from?)

There are only two prepositions that we can use to answer the question "Woher?":

- "aus"
- "von"

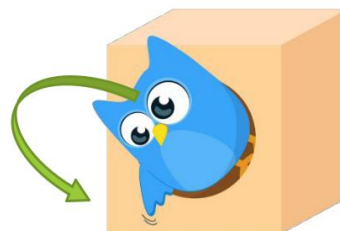
Both prepositions always require the use of the DATIVE case!

THE PREPOSITION "AUS"

"Aus" describes how to leave something or somewhere physically.

That means that the subject has to be inside something (i.e., a building) before leaving it or before it has left it. For countries, cities, and regions, you also have to use "aus".

- „Der Vogel kommt **aus** der Kiste (heraus).“
- „Ich komme **aus** Deutschland.“



THE PREPOSITION "VON"

"Von" also describes that you come from a certain place/area.

Therefore, leaving is not the focus.

- „Ich komme **vom** Bahnhof.“
(Meaning the area around and including the station, not necessarily the building.)

If you can't enter something, you can't physically leave it and

Therefore, have to use "von" as well:

- „Ich komme **vom** Einkaufen.“
(You can not physically leave "shopping" → von)



SUMMARY

- Only two prepositions can answer the question "woher?", "aus" and "von".
- Both always require the **DATIVE** case!
- "Aus" means leaving something physically.
- "Von" focuses on the general area or if you can't leave it physically (like actions: shopping, sports, ...).

Prepositions

PREPOSITIONS L2.3 – PREPOSITIONS ANSWERING "WOHIN?"

General Info.....	170
Two-Case Prepositions	170
“in” vs. “zu”	171
“zu” vs. “nach”	172
Summary	172



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/prepositionsL2-3/>

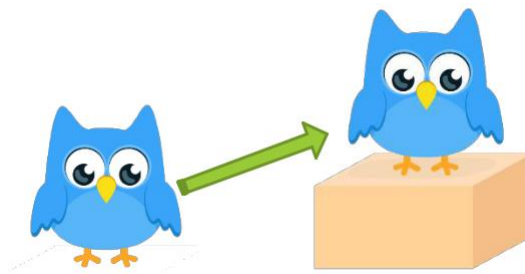
GENERAL INFO

All prepositions that we use to answer the question "wo?" can also answer the question "wohin?".

The only exception is "bei". Instead of "bei", you have to use "zu" or "nach".

When we use the prepositions that answer the question "wohin?", we describe a movement that ends in a position. Thus, it corresponds to the meaning of the preposition.

- „Ich gehe **auf** die Kiste.“

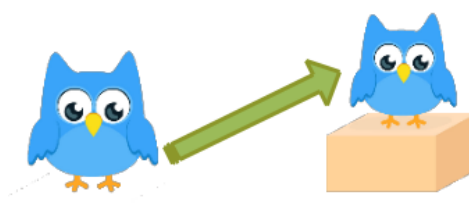


TWO-CASE PREPOSITIONS

It exactly works the same with the other so-called two-case prepositions (auf, über, unter, vor, hinter, in, neben, an, and zwischen)

- **Two-Case:** Answering wo? → followed by the **Dative Case**
 Answering where to? → followed by the **Accusative Case**

Wo? „Ich bin **auf der Kiste**.“ **Wohin?** „Ich gehe **auf die Kiste**.“



More examples of two-case prepositions are on the next page.

	Wohin? (+ Accusative)	Wo? (+ Dative)
an	„Er hängt das Bild an die Wand .“	„Das Bild hängt an der Wand .“
auf	„Er geht auf einen Berg .“	„Er steht auf einem Berg .“
hinter	„Sie geht hinter das Sofa .“	„Sie steht hinter dem Sofa .“
in	„Sie geht in den Bahnhof .“	„Sie ist im Bahnhof .“
neben	„Maja setzt sich neben eine Frau .“	„Maja sitzt neben einer Frau .“
über	„Der Vogel fliegt über den Wald .“	„Der Vogel fliegt über dem Wald .“
unter	„Die Katze legt sich unter den Tisch .“	„Die Katze sitzt unter dem Tisch .“
vor	„Er stellt sich vor die Tür .“	„Er steht vor der Tür .“
zwischen	„Er läuft zwischen die Autos .“	„Er steht zwischen den Autos .“

“IN” VS. “ZU”

"In" and "zu" are the opposite of "aus" and "von".



„Ich gehe **in die Kiste**.“

INTO

“I go into the box.”



„Ich komme **zu dir**.“

NOT INTO – just close

“I come to you.”

"ZU" VS. "NACH"

"Zu" and "nach" have the same meaning.

But "nach" is used for continents, countries, cities, and regions. For everything else, we use "zu".

- „Ich gehe **nach** Deutschland.“
- „Ich fliege **nach** Amerika.“
- „Ich fahre **nach** Berlin.“
- „Ich fahre **nach** Sachsen.“

BUT: „Ich fahre **zu** meiner Oma.“

Exception for "nach": If the country or region requires an article (like Switzerland: "die Schweiz") you have to use "in" instead of "nach":

„Ich fahre **nach** Deutschland.“

BUT: „Ich fahre **in** die Schweiz.“

„Ich fliege **nach** Kalifornien.“

„Ich fliege **in** die Toskana.“

SUMMARY

- All prepositions that answer the question "wo?" (except "bei") can be used to answer the question "wohin?" as well.
- Those prepositions are called alternating prepositions and are followed by the dative case when answering the question "wo?" and they are followed by the accusative case when answering the question "wohin?".
- "Zu" and "nach" need to be used instead of "bei", and both always require the **Dative** case.
- "Zu" and "nach" describe a movement in the direction of something or someone.

PREPOSITIONS L2.4 MORE LOCAL PREPOSITIONS

The Prepositions "DURCH"	174
The Prepositions "UM...HERUM"	174
The Prepositions "GEGENÜBER"	174



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/prepositionsL2-4/>

THE PREPOSITIONS "DURCH"

The preposition "durch" describes the crossing of something.

- „Ich fahre **durch** den Tunnel.“
- „Ich springe **durch** den Reifen.“
- „Der Mann geht **durch** die Tür.“
- „Wir fliegen **durch** einen Sturm.“



"Durch" is always followed by a noun in the **accusative** case.

THE PREPOSITIONS "UM...HERUM"

The preposition "um ... herum" describes going around something.

- „Ich gehe **um** den Baum **herum**.“
- „Ich fahre **um** das Schild **herum**.“
- „Der Mann geht **um** den Zaun **herum**.“
- „Wir wandern **um** den Berg **herum**.“



The preposition "um ... herum" is a two-part preposition. The noun to which the preposition refers comes between the two parts. If the situation is clear, "herum" can also be omitted.

The preposition "um" is always followed by a noun in the **accusative** case.

THE PREPOSITIONS "GEGENÜBER"

The preposition "gegenüber" describes being on the other side of the street.

- „Ich bin **gegenüber** der Bank.“
→ I am on the side of the street opposite the bank.
 - „Ich stehe **gegenüber** der Post.“
→ I am in front of the post office but on the other side of the street.
- "Gegenüber" is always followed by a noun in the **dative** case.



Prepositions

PREPOSITIONS L3 – TEMPORAL PREPOSITIONS

General Info.....	176
Temporal Prepositions with Accusative	176
Temporal Prepositions with Dative	176
Temporal Prepositions with Genitive	177
Summary	177
Task	177



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/prepositionsL3/>

GENERAL INFO

Temporal prepositions are those related to time.

Questions = When? For how long?

The preposition determines which case to use.

Depending on the situation, we have to use different temporal prepositions.

TEMPORAL PREPOSITIONS WITH ACCUSATIVE

Preposition	Meaning	Example
um	The Time	„Ich gehe um 8 Uhr ins Bett.“
bis	→ X	„Ich warte bis nächste Woche .“
von (Dat) ...bis	X → X	„Die Bar ist von 8 bis 18 Uhr geöffnet.“
für	Time Period	„Wir werden für eine Woche in den Urlaub fliegen.“
über	longer/more than	„Ich warte schon über eine Stunde auf dich!“

TEMPORAL PREPOSITIONS WITH DATIVE

Preposition	Meaning	Example
an / am	Day / Time of Day	„ Am Montag fange ich an.“ ¹ „ Am Morgen bin ich müde.“ ²
in / im	Future Within a time period	„ In einer Woche fliege ich in den Urlaub.“ ³ „ Im Winter schneit es viel.“ ⁴
vor	before (-----) X	„ Vor der Arbeit macht er Sport.“ ⁵
nach	X (-----) after	„ Nach der Arbeit schläft er.“ ⁶
seit	Past until now	„ Seit meiner Verletzung kann ich nicht mehr Fußball spielen.“ ⁷
bei	At the same time /during	„ Beim Abendessen sehe ich die Nachrichten.“ ⁸
ab	Starting point (in the future)	„ Ab nächster Woche will er mit dem Rauchen aufhören.“ ⁹
von... an	Starting point (in the future)	„ Von nächster Woche an will er mit dem Rauchen aufhören.“ ¹⁰

TEMPORAL PREPOSITIONS WITH GENITIVE

Preposition	Meaning	Example
während	Simultaneously	„ Während des Spiels kaufte er etwas zu trinken.“ ¹
innerhalb	At some point in a specific period of time	„ Innerhalb einer Stunde müssen alle die Hausaufgaben bei mir abgegeben haben.“ ²
außerhalb	Not in a specific time period of time	„ Außerhalb der Öffnungszeiten geht bei uns niemand ans Telefon.“ ³

SUMMARY

- **Temporal prepositions refer to time, a point in time, or a period of time.**
- Depending on the situation, we have to use different temporal prepositions.
- The prepositions determine the case! Always! But the case can differ depending on their use as a local, temporal, causal, or modal preposition.
- Remember! The case may also change depending on whether the preposition is used as a local, modal, or temporal preposition.

TASK



- Copy the different prepositions and their meanings in your notebook.
- Write down the preposition in the color that represents the case that is required.

Pronouns

PRONOUNS L1 – WHAT ARE PRONOUNS?

Definition	179
Pronouns in English	179
Different Types of Pronouns.....	179
Do you have to decline the Pronouns?	180
Task	180



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/pronounsL1/>

DEFINITION

Pronouns replace a noun.

→ We use pronouns to avoid repetition.

- „Da ist mein Mann. **Er** kommt zu spät!“



PRONOUNS IN ENGLISH

In English, we use pronouns in a similar way to the German language.

Examples:

- He (er)
- She (sie)
- It (es)
- Something (etwas)
- Anybody (irgendjemand)
- ...



DIFFERENT TYPES OF PRONOUNS

There are:

- Personal Pronouns (ich, du, er, sie, es, ...)
- Possessive Pronouns (meins, deins, seins, ...)
- Reflexive Pronouns (sich, mich, dich, ...)
- Relative Pronouns (welche, welcher, der, die, das, ...)
- Demonstrative Pronouns (dieser, diese, dieses, ...)
- Indefinite Pronouns (niemand, jemand, ...).



DO YOU HAVE TO DECLINE THE PRONOUNS?

Bad news: You have to decline most of them.

TASK

**Native Language Task**

- Find out how pronouns function in your native language.
- Which types of pronouns do you have? (Probably they are the same ones!)

Pronouns

PRONOUNS L2 – PERSONAL PRONOUNS

What are Personal Pronouns?	182
What information do personal Pronouns have?	182
The Different Forms.....	182
Use of the Different personal Pronouns.....	183
Personal Pronouns – 1 st Person (ich, wir).....	183
Personal Pronouns – 2 nd Person (du, ihr, <u>S</u> ie)	183
Personal Pronouns – 3 rd Person (er, sie, es).....	183
Summary	183



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/pronounsL2/>

WHAT ARE PERSONAL PRONOUNS?

We use personal pronouns to replace names we've already mentioned, to talk about ourselves or someone or something else.

- „**Er** sieht **ihn**.“
- „**Sie** sieht **es**.“
- „**Wir** sehen **sie**.“

WHAT INFORMATION DO PERSONAL PRONOUNS HAVE?

Personal pronouns show the **gender** (masculine, feminine, neuter), the **number** (singular, plural), and the **case** (nominative, accusative, dative, genitive) of the noun they represent, and you have to decline them.

Examples:

- "er" = 3rd person, masculine, singular, nominative
- "wir" = 1st person, plural, nominative
- "es" = 2nd person, neuter, singular, nominative
- "ich" = 1st person, singular, nominative

THE DIFFERENT FORMS

Person		Form	English
1 st Person Singular		ich	I
2 nd Person Singular		du	you
3 rd Person Singular	Masculine	er	he
	Feminine	sie	she
	Neuter	es	it
1 st Person Plural		wir	we
2 nd Person Plural		ihr	you (you all)
3 rd Person Plural		sie	they
Formal 2 nd Person (Plural & Singular)		<u>S</u> ie	you

USE OF THE DIFFERENT PERSONAL PRONOUNS

Personal Pronouns – 1st Person (ich, wir)

We speak in the 1st person when we talk about ourselves.

- „**Ich** gehe nach Hause.“
- „**Wir** machen immer unsere Hausaufgaben.“

Personal Pronouns – 2nd Person (du, ihr, Sie)

We speak in the 2nd person when we address someone. "Du" and "ihr" are the informal versions, while "Sie" is the formal version. Grammatically it corresponds to the 3rd person plural, but it's always capitalized.

- „**Du** wirst heute dein Zimmer aufräumen.“
- „Habt **ihr** eure Deutsch-Hausaufgaben schon gemacht?“

Personal Pronouns – 3rd Person (er, sie, es)

In the 3rd person, we speak about other things or people. Usually, these have been named before, and it is clear who or what we are talking about.

- „Marcel ist in Luisa verliebt?“ – „Keine Ahnung, aber **er** geht heute mit **ihr** ins Kino.“

SUMMARY

- Personal pronouns replace persons or things.
- They are used to avoid having to use the name of the person or object all the time.
- If the noun replaced by the pronoun isn't obvious (i.e., two nouns with the same gender), you should use the noun itself. The pronoun otherwise could cause misunderstandings.

„Frau Meier hat eine Katze.“ – „Ich mag **sie** sehr.“ (Who? The cat or Ms. Meier?)

PRONOUNS L3 – PERSONAL PRONOUNS IN ALL CASES

COMPARISON TO ENGLISH

We have to decline personal pronouns as well.

Examples:

- „Das ist Max. **Er** spielt gerne Fußball.“ - “This is Max. **He** likes to play football.”
- „**Ich** mag **ihn**.“ - “I like **him**.”
- „**Ich** schenke **ihm** einen Ball.“ - “I give **him** a ball.”

THE DIFFERENT FORMS

	Person	Gender	Nominative	Accusative	Dative	Genitive
Singular	1 st Person		ich	mich	mir	meiner
	2 nd Person		du	dich	dir	deiner
	3 rd Person	Masculine	er	ihn	ihm	seiner
		Feminine	sie	sie	ihr	ihrer
		Neuter	es	es	ihm	seiner
Plural	1 st Person		wir	uns	uns	unser
	2 nd Person		ihr	euch	euch	euer
	3 rd Person		sie	sie	ihnen	ihrer
Formal			Sie	Sie	Ihnen	Ihrer

TASK



- Write the different forms on a piece of paper and put it on your fridge, beside your computer, or on the bathroom door! Wherever you will see it very often!
- Use the same colors and memorize them!
- If you write them down yourself and pin them somewhere visible, you will learn them automatically!

Pronouns

PRONOUNS L4 – REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

What are Reflexive Pronouns?	186
How to form Reflexive Pronouns	186
Use of Reflexive Pronouns	186
Use With Reflexive Verbs	186
Use With Reciprocal Verbs	187
Summary	187



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/pronounsL4/>

WHAT ARE REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS?

The reflexive pronouns are: **mich**, **mir**, **dich**, **dir**, **sich**, **uns**, **euch**, and **sich**. We use them together with reflexive and reciprocal verbs.

They always correspond to the subject and can only be in the **dative** and **accusative** case.

- „Ich wasche **mir** die Hände.“
- „Wir treffen **uns**.“

HOW TO FORM REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

The subject determines reflexive pronouns, and you have to decline them:

Personal Pronouns	Reflexive Pronouns	
	Accusative	Dative
ich	mich	mir
du	dich	dir
er/sie/es	sich	sich
wir	uns	uns
ihr	euch	euch
sie/Sie	sich	sich

There is a difference between **accusative** and **dative** in the 1st and 2nd person singular.

USE OF REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

Use With Reflexive Verbs

Reflexive Verbs = Verbs that refer back to the subject itself.

- „Ich wasche **mich**.“ – **Accusative** (I wash myself.)
- „Ich wasche **mir** die Hände.“ – **Dative** (I wash myself the hands.)

In general, the reflexive pronoun is in the accusative. However, it is only in the dative if the verb requires a dative complement or both an accusative and dative complement.

Explained simply: If there are two (grammatical) objects, we use the reflexive pronoun in the dative. It is also used in the dative if the verb requires it, like "helfen":

- „Ich helfe **dir**.“ – Dative
- „Ich kaufe **mir** ein Auto.“ – Dative
- „Ich wasche **mir** die Hände.“ – Dative

Use With Reciprocal Verbs

Reciprocal verbs are verbs with a plural subject where the two people in the subject perform the action with the other person in the subject. Reciprocal reflexive pronouns correspond to the meaning “miteinander/einander” and thus exist only in the plural.

- „Die zwei Frauen sehen **sich**.“ (They see each other.)
- „Sie sehen **einander**.“ (They see each other.)
- „Sie streiten **sich**.“ (They fight with each other.)
- „Sie streiten **miteinander**.“ (They fight with each other.)

These verbs also include: *sich kennen*, *sich lieben*, *sich einigen*, *sich küssen*

SUMMARY

- Reflexive pronouns always correspond to the subject.
- They can only be in the dative and accusative cases.
- If there is no 2nd object and the verb doesn't use a dative complement, the reflexive pronoun is accusative.

Pronouns

PRONOUNS L5 – POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

What are Possessive Pronouns?	189
Possessive Articles & Possessive Pronouns.....	189
Construction	189
Declension	190
Usage	191
Summary	191
Task	191



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/pronounsL5/>

WHAT ARE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS?

Possessive pronouns show ownership or belonging and replace a previously mentioned noun. They are *mein, dein, sein, ihr, unser, euer, ihr*, and the declined forms.

Examples:

- „Ist das dein Koffer?“ – „Ja, das ist **meiner**!“
- „Wem gehört die Katze?“ – „Das ist **meine**!“

POSSESSIVE ARTICLES & POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

Difference between **Possessive Articles** and **Possessive Pronouns**:

- „Wem gehört der Ball?“ – „Das ist **mein** Ball.“
→ Possessive article because there is a noun behind it.
- „Wem gehört der Ball?“ – „Das ist **meiner**.“
→ Possessive pronoun because there is no noun behind it.

CONSTRUCTION

The "owner" (ich, du, er, sie, es, wir, ihr, sie, Sie) determines the base form.

The gender and number of the noun that is "owned", as well as the case, tell you which ending you have to use.

= 100% JUST LIKE THE POSSESSIVE ARTICLES

„Wem gehört der Ball?“ (Gender = masculine)

Person	Base Form	Pronoun	Case
ich	mein	→ „Das ist meiner !“	Always nominative because the possessive pronoun is the subject. → Nominative (m) = "d er " → Ending " er "
du	dein	→ „Das ist deiner !“	
er	sein	→ „Das ist seiner !“	
sie	ihr	→ „Das ist ihrer !“	
es	sein	→ „Das ist seiner !“	
wir	unser	→ „Das ist unserer !“	
ihr	euer	→ „Das ist eurer !“	
sie/Sie	ihr/Ihr	→ „Das ist ihrer/Ihrer !“	

DECLENSION

The declension is related to the possessive article's declension.

But: Pronouns always take the ending of the definite article, including in the nominative case (m/n) and accusative case (m).

	Gender	Nominative	Accusative	Dative	Genitive
Singular	Masculine	meiner	meinen	meinem	meines
	Neuter	mein(e)s	mein(e)s	meinem	meines
	Feminine	meine	meine	meiner	meiner
Plural		meine	meine	meinen	meiner

Exception:

euer Haus → euer**s**! / euer**s**

euer Ball → euer**er**!

If you add an ending to "euer", you must drop the "e" in the middle. (Unless you only add "s").

USAGE

It is used as a substitute for a previously mentioned noun when asking about affiliation.

- „Wem gehört das Auto?“ – „Das ist **mein(e)s**!“

We use it mostly after the question of who owns something. If you repeat the noun, it is no longer a possessive pronoun anymore but a possessive article.

SUMMARY

- If there is a noun behind it, it's a possessive article. If not, it's a possessive pronoun.
- The construction is the same as the one of the possessive article.
- But possessive pronouns also get an ending in the nominative case (m/n) and accusative case (n).

TASK



- Write down ten sample phrases, first with the possessive article and then the same one with a possessive pronoun.
- Check your own language! Do you have possessive pronouns? How do you use them?

Pronouns

PRONOUNS L6 – RELATIVE PRONOUNS

What are Relative Pronouns?	193
Relative Pronouns – Forms	193
How do you determine the Relative Pronoun?	194
Relative Pronouns with Prepositions	194
Summary	194



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/pronounsL6/>

WHAT ARE RELATIVE PRONOUNS?

We use relative pronouns to start relative clauses.

You have to decline relative pronouns.

The gender (masculine, feminine, neuter) and number (singular or plural) relate to the corresponding noun.

The case is determined by its position and function **in the relative clause**.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS – FORMS

Relative pronouns are declined almost exactly like the corresponding definite articles.

	Nominative	Accusative	Dative	Genitive
Masculine	der	den	dem	dessen
Neuter	das	das	dem	dessen
Feminine	die	die	der	deren
Plural	die	die	denen	deren

In **genitive** and **dative** plural, we take the definite article and add an "en". Instead of "der", "die", or "das", we can also use "welcher" as a relative pronoun.

	Nominative	Accusative	Dative	Genitive
Masculine	welcher	welchen	welchem	welches
Neuter	welches	welches	welchem	welches
Feminine	welche	welche	welcher	welcher
Plural	welche	welche	welchen	welcher

HOW DO YOU DETERMINE THE RELATIVE PRONOUN?

Example: „Das ist der Mann, **der** einen Ferrari hat.“

1. To which noun does the relative pronoun refer to?
Answer: "der Mann"
2. What is the gender and number of the reference word ("der Mann")?
Answer: Masculine and singular.
3. Which case does the relative pronoun have in the subordinate clause?
Answer: **Nominative**.

4. Pronoun = Masculine + Singular + Nominative → "der"

RELATIVE PRONOUNS WITH PREPOSITIONS

If there is a preposition before the to-be-replaced noun in the relative clause, the same preposition must come before the relative pronoun. It doesn't matter if there was a preposition before the noun in the main clause or not.

- „Da kommt **der Bus**. Wir warten schon so lange **auf ihn** (den Bus).“
- „Da kommt **der Bus**, **auf den** wir schon so lange warten.“
- „Dort ist **die Schule**. Ich bin früher **in sie** (die Schule) gegangen.“
- „Dort ist **die Schule**, **in die** ich früher gegangen bin.“

SUMMARY

- We use relative pronouns to start relative clauses.
- You have to decline relative pronouns.
- They get the genus and the numerus from the reference word.
- They get the case according to the situation in the relative clause.

PRONOUNS L6 EXTRA – HOW TO DETERMINE THE CASE OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS

HOW DO WE EASILY DETERMINE THE CASE?

Put the reference word in the relative clause!

- „Das ist der Mann, **der** einen Ferrari hat.“
- „Das ist der Mann. **Der Mann** hat einen Ferrari.“

The second version doesn't sound good because "der Mann" is repeated, but it shows which case to use.

EXAMPLES

Genus and number remain the same since the reference word remains the same as well.

The case depends on the relative clause.

Das ist <u>der Mann</u>	der	einen Ferrari hat.	Nominative
	den	wir gesehen haben.	Accusative
	dem	der Ferrari gehört.	Dative
	dessen	Ferrari kaputt ist.	Genitive

That's the man

- **who** has a Ferrari.
- **whom** we have seen.
- **to whom** the Ferrari belongs.
- **whose** Ferrari is broken.



Pronouns

PRONOUNS L7 – DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

What are Demonstrative Pronouns?	197
DER, DIE, and DAS as Demonstrative Pronouns	197
Word Order	197
Demonstrative Pronoun: "DAS"	198
"DIESER" / "JENER"	198
Summary	199



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/pronounsL7/>

WHAT ARE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS?

- We use demonstrative pronouns to emphasize (to demonstrate) something.
- They are always strongly stressed.
- They can be used as a placeholder for a previously mentioned noun.
- There are different demonstrative pronouns.
- They are used to avoid the repetition of the noun.

"DER, DIE, AND DAS" AS DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

The declension of the demonstrative pronouns "der", "die", and "das" is very similar to the declension of the relative pronouns.

	Nominative	Accusative	Dative	Genitive
Masculine	der	den	dem	dessen
Neuter	das	das	dem	dessen
Feminine	die	die	der	deren
Plural	die	die	denen	deren/derer

WORD ORDER

Demonstrative pronouns are strongly stressed and are often in position 1:

- „Der Mann gibt der Frau **den** Brief.“
- „**Den** gibt der Mann der Frau.“
- „**Den** gibt er ihr!“

Alternative word order: „Er gibt **den** ihr.“

Putting the demonstrative pronoun in the third or fourth position is not grammatically wrong, but it contradicts the stress and emphasis. Therefore, native speakers will probably be confused if you put it in a place other than position one.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN: "DAS"

"Das" combined with the verb "sein" refers to a person or thing (**pointing the finger at it**). We often combine it with the adverbs "hier", "da", and "dort".

- „Papa was ist **das** da?“ – „**Das** ist **ein** Hammer.“
 - „Wem gehören die Schuhe dort?“ – „**Das** sind **meine**!“
- If we don't know what something is, we use "das".

"Das" can also refer to an entire sentence content or situation.

- „Anna hat sich von Tobi getrennt!“
„Bist du dir sicher? **Das** kann nicht sein!“
- „Der Fernseher ist kaputt!“
„**Das** wusste ich auch so schon!“

A situation or idea has no gender → das

"DIESER" / "JENER"

"Dieser" and "jener" can be both articles and pronouns.

In both instances, they are declined the same way.

	Nominative	Accusative	Dative	Genitive
Masculine	dies er	dies en	dies em	dies es
Neuter	dies es	dies es	dies em	dies es
Feminine	dies e	dies e	dies er	dies er
Plural	dies e	dies e	dies en	dies er

"Dieser" is used to emphasize something close to the speaker.

"Jener" is used to emphasize something further away from the speaker.

- „Gefallen dir die Schuhe?“
– „Nein, **diese** nicht aber **jene**!“
- „Ist **das** dein neues Auto?“
– „**Dieses** nicht, aber **jenes**!“

Dieser = this / these

Jener = that / those



Advice:

In informal language, "jenes" is rarely used.

Instead, "der", "die", "das", ... + "da"/"dort" are used.

„Gefallen dir die Schuhe?“ – „Nein, **diese** nicht aber **die dort**!“

„Ist **das** dein neues Auto?“ – „**Dieses** nicht, aber **das dort**!“

SUMMARY

- With demonstrative pronouns, we can stress and emphasize things.
- We use "der", "die", "das", and their declined versions.
- If we cannot determine the gender, we use "das".
- To show distance, we can use "dieser" or "jener".

Pronouns

PRONOUNS L8 – INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

What are Indefinite Pronouns?	201
Different Groups of Indefinite Pronouns.....	201
Indefinite Pronouns only for People.....	201
Indefinite Pronoun "man"	201
Indefinite Pronouns "jemand" & "niemand"	202
Indefinite Pronouns only for Things	202
Indefinite Pronoun "etwas"	202
Indefinite Pronoun "nichts"	203
Indefinite Pronoun "alles"	203
Indefinite Pronouns for People <u>and</u> Things	204



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/pronounsL8/>

WHAT ARE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS?

Indefinite pronouns are substitutes **for people or things**.

The difference between personal pronouns and indefinite pronouns is that indefinite pronouns always have a general meaning. Therefore, they can't stand for a specific person or thing.

Example:

- „Bringst du mir **etwas** zu essen mit?“
= general, nothing specific
- „Bringst du mir **einen Döner** mit?“
= concrete. You should bring a “Döner”, nothing else!

DIFFERENT GROUPS OF INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

There are indefinite pronouns **for people**:

"**man**" – "**jemand**" – "**niemand**"

There are indefinite pronouns **for things**:

"**etwas**" – "**nichts**" – "**alles**" – "**welch-**"

There are indefinite pronouns **for people and things**:

"**jede**" – "**einige**" – "**mache**" – "**ein**" – "**kein**" – "**all-**"

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS ONLY FOR PEOPLE

Indefinite Pronoun "man"

"Man" is **impersonal** and can refer to **one or more people**.

It is always in the **third person singular** and must be **declined**.

Nominative	Accusative	Dative
man	einen	einem

- „Hier muss **man** **einem** immer alles drei Mal erklären!“

Indefinite Pronouns "jemand" & "niemand"

"Jemand" can also only be in the **third person singular**.

It refers to **an unspecified person**.

In informal language, many people drop the declension ending. Both versions are correct. It sounds fancier if you use it, but it doesn't matter if you don't.

"Niemand" is the negative form of "jemand".

Nominative	Accusative	Dative
jemand	jemand(en)	jemand(em)
niemand	niemand(en)	niemand(em)

Examples:

- „Spricht hier **jemand** Deutsch?“ – (No one responds)
- „Schade, **niemand** spricht hier Deutsch.“
- „Wenn man **jemanden** braucht, ist **niemand** da.“

"Jemand" can also be combined with "irgend-". That makes it even more unspecified.

- „**Irgendjemand** wird das schon machen.“

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS ONLY FOR THINGS

Indefinite Pronoun "etwas"

"Etwas" is unchangeable → No declension.

It is a **replacement** for **unspecified things or situations**.

We can also strengthen it with "irgend-".

In informal language, we often shorten it to "was".

- „Hörst du **etwas**?“
- „Ja, da ist **irgendetwas**!“



ATTENTION

"Etwas" has a second meaning: "ein bisschen" or "ein wenig".

"Etwas mehr Erholung würde dir sicher guttun."

EN: A little bit more relaxation would be good for you.

"Hast du etwas mehr Geld für mich, Papa?"

EN: Do you have a bit more money for me, dad?

Vs.

"Siehst du etwas?"

EN: Do you see **something**?

Indefinite Pronoun "nichts"

"Nichts" is the negation of "etwas" and is also unchangeable.

- „Hast du etwas gehört?“ – „Nein ich habe nichts gehört.“
- „Heute ist wieder nichts passiert.“
- „Ich werde heute nichts machen.“



ATTENTION

Don't confuse "nichts" with the negation "nicht".

Indefinite Pronoun "alles"

"Alles" has a **strong generalizing meaning** and stands for uncountable **things or actions**.

- „Ich mache am liebsten alles allein.“
- „Alles oder nichts!“

"Nichts" is the negation of "alles".

"Alles" refers to situations, things, and actions where we cannot determine the gender.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS FOR PEOPLE AND THINGS

Indefinite pronouns for people and things can also be used as articles. If there is a noun behind it, it's an article. If not, it's a pronoun. (Definite article declension endings apply.)

Examples:

- „Ich will **jeden** Tag Sport machen.“ → article
- „**Jeder** will gesund leben.“ → indefinite pronoun

Indefinite Pronoun "jede"

"Jede" must be declined as a definite article (der, die, das...).

The corresponding noun must be singular.

It describes each individual part of a group.

- „**Jeder** will ein iPhone.“ – Jeder Mensch (Everyone wants an iPhone.)
- „Ich bin mit **jedem** zufrieden.“ – mit jedem Schüler (I am please with everyone.)
- „Wir haben **jeden** angerufen.“ – Jeden Kunden (We have called everyone.)

Indefinite Pronoun "alle"

"All-" must be declined like a definite article (der, die, das...). (Warning: always plural)

The corresponding noun must be plural.

It describes the entire group.

- „**Alle** wollen ein iPhone.“ – Alle Menschen (All want an iPhone.)
- „Ich bin mit **allen** zufrieden.“ – mit allen Schülern (I am please with all.)
- „Wir haben **alle** angerufen.“ – Alle Kunden (We have called all.)

In English, you would still use “everyone”, whether it’s plural or singular. But to make it more obvious, I translated the examples word-by-word.

Indefinite Pronouns "einige / manche"

"Einige" and "manche" in singular always refer to things → ending "es".

In the plural, they can also refer to people.

They refer to an indefinite quantity:

- „**Einige** müssen den Test wiederholen.“
- „Ich würde **manches** ändern.“

"Einige" and "manche" are often used as articles and rarely as pronouns.

Indefinite Pronouns "ein / kein"

Declension:

	Gender	Nominative	Accusative	Dative	Genitive
Singular	Masculine	einer	einen	einem	eines
	Neuter	eins	eins	einem	eines
	Feminine	eine	eine	einer	einer
Plural		welche	welche	welchen	welcher

"Kein" has the same endings.

Examples:

- „Hast du ein Auto?“
- „Ja, ich habe **eins**.“ / „Nein, ich habe **keins**.“
- „Gibst du mir noch ein paar Äpfel?“
- „Ja, hier hast du **welche**.“ / „Nein, du bekommst **keine** mehr.“

If we talk about something uncountable, we have to replace "ein" with "welche" in the singular as well.

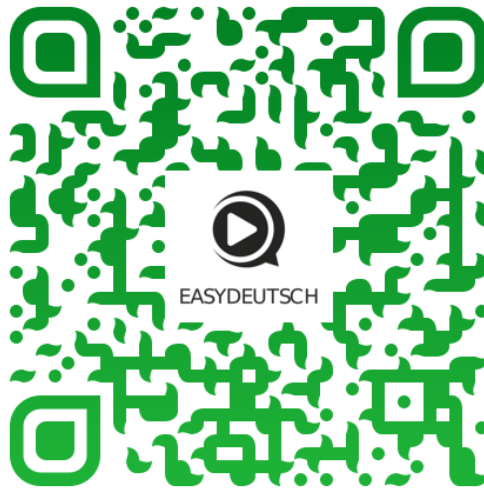
That only applies **to things**. Not for people. People are always countable!

- „Ich brauche noch Salz! Hast du noch **welches**?“
- „Nein, aber frag mal Frau Meier, sie hat bestimmt **welches**!“

Pronouns

PRONOUNS L9 – THE PRONOUN "ES"

General Info.....	207
The Use of "es".....	207
As a Substitute	207
To Represent a Subordinate Clause	208
For Impersonal Verbs.....	209
Further Uses Of "es"	209
Summary	210



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/pronounsL9/>

GENERAL INFO

The pronoun "es" has many different functions in German. We can use it as a **pronoun** standing for a **single word**, a clause, and an **entire sentence**.

Also, many specific expressions use "es".

- „Wie geht **es** dir?“ – „Mir geht **es** gut.“
- „Das ist mein Fahrrad.“ – „**Es** ist neu.“

THE USE OF "ES"

As a Substitute

1. As a substitute for a neuter noun:

- „Das Auto ist rot. **Es** ist ein Ferrari.“



"Es" is used as a personal pronoun. We use it to avoid the repetition of the noun "das Auto."

2. As a substitute for an entire sentence:

- „Was macht unsere Tochter?“ – „Ich weiß **es** nicht.“



"Es" is a substitute for the whole sentence. („Ich weiß nicht, was unsere Tochter macht.“) We use it to avoid repetition as well.

3. As a substitute for an adjective:

- „Meine Mutter ist sehr jung. Deine ist **es** nicht.“



In this example, "es" is a substitute for an adjective. This variant is not that common, but it is possible to use. It has the same purpose as the others: avoiding repetition.

4. As a substitute for a clause ("es" replaces the action):

- „Maria du solltest doch das Geschirr abwaschen!“ – „Warum hast du **es** noch nicht gemacht?“


"Es" is a substitute for the action "das Geschirr abwaschen" (to wash the dishes):
 "Warum hast du das Geschirr noch nicht abgewaschen?" The purpose stays the same:
 no repetition and keeping the sentence short.

To Represent a Subordinate Clause

Example:

- „**Es** tut mir leid, dass ich gestern nicht da war.“


When the main clause precedes the subordinate clause (most often a clause with "dass", an infinitive clause, or an indirect question), the situation to which the main clause refers is not yet known. Therefore, you have to use "es".

Examples for "es" as a representative of a subordinate clause:

"dass"-sentence:

- „**Es** tut mir leid, dass ich gestern nicht da war.“
 „Dass ich gestern nicht da war, tut mir leid.“

Indirect question:

- „**Es** ist fraglich, ob er kommt.“
 „Ob er kommt, ist fraglich.“

Infinitive clause:

- „**Es** ist leicht, Deutsch zu lernen.“
 „Deutsch zu lernen, ist leicht.“

For Impersonal Verbs

You can use impersonal verbs only in the third person singular. Therefore, we have to use "es." The impersonal verbs include:

Verbs of feel and sensing:

- „Wie geht **es** dir?“
- „**Es** schmeckt mir nicht.“
- „**Es** stinkt hier.“

Verbs that describe the weather:

- „**Es** regnet/schneit ...“
- „**Es** ist sonnig/neblig/windig/warm/kalt...“
- „**Es** sind 12 Grad.“

The "es" is required and can't be left out. There is no subject, but we need one in order to form a grammatically correct sentence. Therefore, you have to use "es".

For the time of day or year:

- „**Es** ist 12 Uhr.“
- „**Es** ist noch sehr früh.“
- „**Es** ist Sommer / Winter / Herbst / Frühling.“
- „**Es** sind Ferien.“
- „**Es** ist Weihnachten.“

Further Uses Of "es"

For specific expressions:

- „**Es** gibt nichts Neues.“
- „**Es** ist schwierig/leicht/einfach/schön ... “
- „Wo tut **es** weh?“

In these cases "es" relates to the overall situation or "something" (like an unknown or non-specific subject).

Every sentence has to have a subject! → If the subject is unknown, we simply use "es" as a subject replacement.

Verbs that express a sound:

- „**Es** klingelt an der Tür!“
- „**Es** läuten die Glocken in der Kirche.“

When it is obvious who or what has caused the sound, we don't necessarily have to use "es", but we have to put something in P1.

- „Die Glocken läuten in der Kirche.“
- "Es" isn't used if there is something else in P1

SUMMARY

- "Es" is used as a pronoun for neuter nouns, actions, and whole clauses.
- Additionally, there are specific expressions with "es."
- The most important fact is that a verb always needs a subject.
- If there is no acting person/thing, we use "es" as the grammatical subject.

SENTENCE STRUCTURE

SENTENCE STRUCTURE L1 - DIFFERENCE BETWEEN MAIN AND SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

MAIN CLAUSES

Main clauses are grammatically complete sentences that can stand alone.
The conjugated verb is always in Position 2.

- „Ich **komme** aus Deutschland.“

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

Subordinate clauses cannot stand alone because some important information is missing.
Without this missing information, the sentence can't be fully understood.

The verb is at the end of the sentence.

„..., das ich gestern verloren **habe**.“

SENTENCE STRUCTURE IN GENERAL

In the German language, sentence structure and word order are much more flexible than in other languages.

Two main factors influence sentence structure:

- ✓ How important is the information?
- ✓ Is it a main or a subordinate clause?

However, not everything is possible, and you must follow certain rules.



SENTENCE STRUCTURE L2 – W-QUESTIONS

WHAT ARE W-QUESTION?

W-Questions are questions with question words. All German question words start with the letter "w". You are asking for specific information. It is impossible to answer with only "yes" or "no."

THE DIFFERENT QUESTION WORDS

	Asking for	English	Example
Wer?	Subject (Person)	Who?	„ Wer bist du?“ – „Ich bin Jan.“
Wem?	Dative Object (Indirect Object)	To Whom?	„ Wem gehört das Auto?“ - „Meinem Mann!“
Wen?	Accusative Object (Direct Object)	Whom? / Who?	„ Wen hast du gesehen?“ - „Meinen Chef.“
Was?	Subject/Object (not a person) and actions	What?	„ Was ist das?“ – „Ein Handy.“ „ Was hast du gesehen?“ – „Einen Hai.“ „ Was machst du?“ – „Ich höre Musik.“
Wessen?	Belonging/ Ownership	Whose?	„ Wessen Hund ist das?“ - „Das ist Annas Hund.“
Wo?	Location	Where?	„ Wo wohnst du?“ - „Ich wohne in Dortmund.“
Wohin?	Direction	Where to?	„ Wohin gehst du?“ - „Ich gehe nach Hause.“
Woher?	Origin	From where?	„ Woher kommst du?“ - „Ich komme von der Arbeit.“
Wann?	Time	When?	„ Wann fährst du in Urlaub?“ - „Nächste Woche.“
Warum?	Reason	Why?	„ Warum hast du nicht angerufen?“ - „Weil mein Akku leer ist.“
Wie?	Manner (Adjective)	How?	„ Wie geht es dir?“ - „Gut.“
Welche(r,s)?	Choice	Which...?	„ Welches Auto kaufst du?“ - „Das blaue Auto!“

SENTENCE STRUCTURE L3 – YES/NO-QUESTIONS

What is a Yes / No – Question?	214
Positive Questions	214
Negative Questions.....	214
Word Order	215
Summary	215



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/sent.structureL3/>

WHAT IS A YES / NO – QUESTION?

Yes/no questions are questions where you must decide and answer either "ja", "nein" or "doch" (for negative questions).

Examples:

- „Kommst du heute zu mir?“ – „Ja / Nein“
- „Gehst du zu Phillips Party?“ – „Ja / Nein“

Positive Questions

Positive questions are questions without negation.

Examples:

- „Kommst du aus Berlin?“ – „**Ja**, sicher.“
– „**Nein**, aus Bern.“
- „Machst du Sport?“ – „**Ja**, 3 mal pro Woche.“
– „**Nein**.“
- „Fährst du morgen nach Berlin?“ – „**Ja**.“
– „**Nein**, erst übermorgen.“

Negative Questions

Negative questions are questions with negation

Examples:

- „Magst du Lisa **nicht**?“ – „**Nein**, ich mag sie nicht.“
– „**Doch**. (Ich mag sie sehr.)“
- „Machst du **keinen** Sport?“ – „**Nein**, nie.“
– „**Doch**. (3 Mal pro Woche.)“
- „Fährst du **nicht** nach Berlin?“ – „**Nein**, ich fahre nicht.“
– „**Doch**. (Übermorgen!)“

WORD ORDER

In yes/no questions, the verb is in position 1.

The subject is in position 2.

Example:

Position 1	Position 2	
Kommst	du	heute zur Party?
Geht	er	morgen arbeiten?

We can also raise our voice in a normal sentence to make it sound like a question, like in English, Spanish, and some other languages. But placing the verb in P1 makes it more obvious that we're asking a question.

SUMMARY

- Yes / No Questions ask for a decision.
- We have to answer with "ja", "nein" or "doch".
- We use "doch" if we disagree with a negative question. Due to the negation, the answer "yes" wouldn't be precise enough. They wouldn't know if we agree or disagree.
- The verb is in Position 1 and is followed by the subject.

SENTENCE STRUCTURE L4 – WHAT GOES IN P1?

Anything can be in position 1. The most important information needs to be first. In general, Germans don't waste time and come straight to the point. It's the same with the sentence structure: the most important part of the sentences is in P1, but the conjugated verb stays in P2, even if the subject isn't in P1. (Different from English!)



	Position 1	Position 2	Rest
Question Word	Was	machst	du?
Noun	Das Haus	ist	alt.
Pronoun	Er	trinkt	Kaffee.
Time Phrase	Heute	geht	er in die Schule.
Subordinate Clause	Wenn du kommst,	mache	ich Essen.
Adverbs	Deshalb	mag	ich Maria.

TASK



- Translate the sample phrases into your own language.
- Is it possible to put all those things in position 1, followed by the verb, as well?
- **If yes:** Perfect! Just copy and apply it to German.
- **If no:** No worries, it's flexible. Just start with the part that you want to highlight! As long as the verb stays in P2, it can't be wrong!

SENTENCE STRUCTURE L5 – WHERE IS THE SUBJECT?

COMPARISON TO ENGLISH

In German, the subject of the main clause should be as close to the conjugated verb as possible.

Unlike in English, it DOES NOT HAVE TO be in front of the verb.

We place the most important information always in position 1 for emphasis. When that is not the case, the subject needs to be behind the verb.



EXAMPLE:

- A: „**Ich habe** mein Handy verloren.“
(The subject is the most important information.)
- A: „Wo **ist mein Handy**?“
(The question word is, of course, the most important word!)
- B: „Auf den Bett **liegt es** doch!“
(Here, the answer is the most important phrase!)

TASK



- Compare it to your native language. Does your native language force you, like in English, to put the subject in front of the verb?

SENTENCE STRUCTURE L6 – NEGATION

The three Different Negations	219
Use of "NEIN"	219
Use of "KEIN"	219
Use of "NICHT"	219
Words With A Negative Opposite.....	220
Summary	220



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/sent.structureL6/>

THE THREE DIFFERENT NEGATIONS

In German there are 3 different negations:

- "Nein" – "Willst du ein Eis?" – "**Nein!**"
- "Kein" – "Ich möchte **kein** Eis!"
- "Nicht" – "Ich mag Eis **nicht**."

In English: All of them mean "no" / "not"

USE OF "NEIN"

"Nein" is the negative answer to a question. We use it exclusively to answer questions.

Examples:

- „Hast du deine Hausaufgaben gemacht?“ – „**Nein!**“
- „Bist du fertig?“ – „**Nein**, Mami!“

USE OF "KEIN"

"Kein" can only negate nouns. It is used together with nouns that do not have articles and with nouns with indefinite articles.

"Kein" has to be declined.

Examples:

- „Hast du Durst?“ – „Ich habe **keinen** Durst.“
- „Das ist ein Hund.“ – „Das ist **kein** Hund.“

USE OF "NICHT"

"Nicht" negates an entire sentence or phrase. "Nicht" can be used to negate verbs, adjectives, adverbs, pronouns, repositions, proper nouns, and nouns with definite articles.

More simply, everything that can't be negated with "kein" or "nein".

- „Ich esse das **nicht**.“
- „Ich habe das **nicht** gemacht.“
- „Ich mag dich **nicht**.“

WORDS WITH A NEGATIVE OPPOSITE

Some words have a negative opposite, which is used for negation:

Jemand → Niemand (People)	Siehst du jemand(en)? Ich sehe niemand(en)!
Überall/irgendwo → nirgends/nirgendwo (Places)	„Hast du überall nach dem Handy geschaut?“ „Ich finde es nirgends/nirgendwo! “
Etwas → nichts (Things)	„Darfst du etwas kaufen? Die Serie kommt immer abends.“ „Nein, ich darf nichts kaufen!“
immer → nie (Time)	„Die Serie kommt immer abends.“ „Die Serie kommt nie morgens.“

* You can find more info about how to use these words and their meanings in the section about indefinite pronouns.

SUMMARY

- "Nein" negates questions.
- "Kein" negates nouns with indefinite articles or without articles.
- "Nicht" negates everything else.

SENTENCE STRUCTURE L7 – POSITION OF "NICHT"

Negating an Adverb.....	222
Negating an Adjective	222
Negating a Pronoun	222
Negating a Proper Noun	222
Negative Adjuncts and Complements with Prepositions.....	222
Negating Nouns With Definite Articles or Possessive Pronouns	222
Negating Entire Sentences / Verbs.....	223
With More Than One Verb In The Sentence.....	223
Summary.....	223



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/sent.structureL7/>

NEGATING AN ADVERB

- „Ich wandere gern.“ – „Ich wandere **nicht** gern.“

Word Order: "Nicht" needs to be in front of the adverb that is negated.

NEGATING AN ADJECTIVE

- „Ich bin schlau.“ – „Ich bin **nicht** schlau.“

Word Order: "Nicht" needs to be in front of the adjective that is negated.

NEGATING A PRONOUN

- „Ich habe **nicht** dich angerufen, sondern Uwe.“

Word Order: "Nicht" needs to be in front of the pronoun that is negated.

NEGATING A PROPER NOUN

- „Das ist **nicht** Susi. Das ist Anne!“

Word Order: "Nicht" needs to be in front of the proper noun that is negated.

NEGATIVE ADJUNCTS AND COMPLEMENTS WITH PREPOSITIONS

- „Ich komme **nicht** zu deiner Party.“
- „Ich bin **nicht** bei Frank.“
- „Er kommt **nicht** vor 20 Uhr nach Hause.“

Word Order: "Nicht" needs to be in front of the preposition.

NEGATING NOUNS WITH DEFINITE ARTICLES OR POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

- „Er hat **nicht** seinen Schlüssel, sondern ihren.“
- „Er hat **nicht** das Auto, sondern das Fahrrad bezahlt.“

Word Order: "Nicht" needs to be in front of the article or possessive pronoun.

(rare and almost always combined with "sondern").

NEGATING ENTIRE SENTENCES / VERBS

The conjugated main verb is negated ⇒ the whole sentence / action / situation is negated.

Examples:

„Ich kaufe das Auto **nicht**.“ – “I am not buying the car.”

Word Order: "Nicht" is at the end of the sentence because the verb has to be in P2!

Comparison: "Ich kaufe **nicht** das Auto."

Meaning: I am not buying that car! (But maybe another one!)

With More Than One Verb In The Sentence

Word Order: If there is a 2nd verb in the sentence, i.e., modal verbs, helping verb, ...

"nicht" must be placed in front of the main verb since that's the one we want to negate.

We can place "nicht" in front of the verb because it is not the one in P2

- „Ich möchte das Auto **nicht** kaufen.“
- „Ich habe das Auto **nicht** gekauft.“

SUMMARY

- "Nicht" is in front of the part of the sentence we want to negate.
- If there is a preposition, put "nicht" in front of the preposition.
- "Nicht" comes at the end of the sentences ONLY if we negate the verb in P2.

SENTENCE STRUCTURE L8 – SENTENCE BRACKETS

WHAT ARE SENTENCE BRACKETS?

Some verbs use a prefix, or we use them in combination with a second verb.

The conjugated verb remains in position 2, but the prefix or second verb is at the end of the sentence.

This creates brackets that contain all of the other information ⇒ Sentence Brackets.

Example: „Ich **stehe** um 6 Uhr **auf**.“



WHEN DO WE USE SENTENCE BRACKETS?

We use sentence brackets when there is a separable verb or more than one verb in a sentence:

- Modal verbs
- Perfect tense
- Past perfect tense
- Future tense
- All passive forms



		Position 2		End
Separable Verbs	Ich	räume	heute die Wohnung	auf.
Modal Verbs	Ich	muss	heute die Wohnung	aufräumen.
Perfect	Ich	habe	heute die Wohnung	aufgeräumt.
Past Perfect	Ich	hatte	heute die Wohnung	aufgeräumt.
Future	Ich	werde	heute die Wohnung	aufräumen.
Passive	Die Wohnung	wird	heute von mir	aufgeräumt.

Sentence brackets are primarily used most often in main clauses. In subordinate clauses, the verb is at the end, so no sentence brackets are needed.

That is especially important for separable verbs. If the prefix and the main part of the verb are both at the end, we do not separate them anymore.

- „Ich **stehe** früh **auf**.“
→ With sentence brackets because it's a main clause and the verb is in P2.
- „Ich gehe zeitig ins Bett, weil ich immer früh **aufstehe**.“
→ No sentence brackets are needed because it's a subordinate clause. The prefix and the verb remain together at the end of the sentence → We do not separate them.

SUMMARY

- When there are two verbs in a sentence, the conjugated verb is in position 2 and the second verb always is at the end of the sentence.
- For separable verbs, the verb stem stays in position 2, and the prefix is at the end of the sentence.
- If the separable verb is at the end of the sentence, we do NOT separate it!

TASK



Native Language Check:

- Check your own language!
- Do you have sentence brackets?
- They don't exist in the English language!

SENTENCE STRUCTURE L9 – SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

What are Subordinate Clauses?	227
Word Order	227
Word Order Main Clause + Subordinate Clause.....	227
Word Order: Subordinate Clause + Main Clause.....	227
Word Order: Separable Verbs.....	228
Word Order: More Than One Verb In A Sentence	228
Word Order: Exception	228
Which Conjugations trigger a Subordinate Clauses?	229
Summary	229
Task	229



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/sent.structureL9/>

WHAT ARE SUBORDINATE CLAUSES?

Main Clause: Grammatically complete sentence.

Subordinate Clause: Not grammatically complete; some information is missing.

Typically, subordinate clauses give additional information related to the main clause and cannot stand alone. They are connected to the main clause with conjunctions (dass, wenn, weil, ...) or relative pronouns. The conjugated verb is at the end of the clause.

WORD ORDER

You have to separate subordinate clauses from the main clause with a comma.

The main clause keeps the regular word order, with the verb in position 2.

In the subordinate clause, the verb goes to the end.

Word Order Main Clause + Subordinate Clause

Main Clause (MC)	Subordinate Clause (SC)			
	Conjunction	Subject		End
Ich gehe nicht zum Arzt,	weil	ich	wieder gesund	bin.
Ich kaufe mir ein Auto,	wenn	ich	genug Geld	habe.

Word Order: Subordinate Clause + Main Clause

Subordinate Clause (SC)				Main Clause (MC)		
Conjunction	Subject		SC-End	Verb	Subject	Rest
Weil	ich	krank	bin,	gehe	ich	zum Arzt.
Wenn	ich	Geld	habe,	kaufe	ich	mir ein Auto.
Position 1				Position 2		

- The entire SC is position 1 of the main clause.
- The conjugated verb of the main clause is, as usual, in position 2.
- Only the verb of the subordinate clause goes to the end of the clause.
- The subject stays at the beginning of the sentence.
- The main clause is separated from the subordinate clause by a comma.

Word Order: Separable Verbs

For separable verbs, we must also follow the rule: Conjugated verb needs to be at the end.

But now, because the verb stem is also at the end, the prefix is no longer separated.

- „**Wenn** ich das Fenster **aufmache**, wird es kalt.“

In comparison to: „Ich **mache** das Fenster **auf**.“

Word Order: More Than One Verb In A Sentence

For modal verbs, the perfect tense, the passive voice, etc. There's more than one verb in the sentence.

It still applies: Conjugated verb at the end of the clause.

- „Ich habe keine Zeit, **weil** ich noch einkaufen gehen **muss**.“

In comparison to: „Ich habe keine Zeit.“ „Ich **muss** noch einkaufen gehen.“

Word Order: Exception

For perfect or past perfect, there is an exception to the rule conjugated verb at the end.

Modal verbs and verbs that are used with a 2nd verb in the infinitive form (i.e., "**lassen**", "sehen", "hören") have an irregular word order in perfect and past perfect tenses. The helping verb "haben", therefore, is IN FRONT of the two other verbs (i.e., main verb + modal verb):

As the Main Clause:

- „Ich habe meine Mutter vom Bahnhof **abholen müssen**.“

As a Subordinate Clause:

- „..., weil ich meine Mutter vom Bahnhof **habe abholen müssen**.“

Besides the modal verbs, we CAN use "lassen", "sehen" and "hören" with a second infinitive verb. If we use them like this, the helping verb is in front of the main verb as well.

Now you know why Germans, whenever possible, use the simple past tense instead of the perfect tense with modal verbs.

Because: The exception only applies to perfect tense + modal verbs (and when "lassen", "sehen" and "hören" are being used with two infinitives)

WHICH CONJUGATIONS TRIGGER SUBORDINATE CLAUSES?

There are many! They all answer a question or describe grammatically necessary information:

- Weil: „Ich bin verärgert, **weil** du immer zu spät kommst.“
- Wenn: „Ich bin glücklich, **wenn** du bei mir bist.“
- Dass: „Ich weiß, **dass** du gestern bei Ina warst.“

Other conjugations that are at the beginning of subordinate clauses include "da", "falls", "bevor", everything that starts with "w" after a comma.

SUMMARY

- Subordinate clauses give additional information.
- They cannot stand alone.
- They get triggered by conjunctions (wenn, weil, dass, da, falls, bevor, everything right after a comma that starts with "w" and isn't a verb).
- The verb is at the very end of the subordinate clause.

TASK



1. Native Language Check:

- Check your own language!
- Do you have subordinate clauses and main clauses?
- What are the differences?

2. Memorization

- Write down the most important words that send the verb to the end and write a sentence next to them. Check my list for the most important ones!

SENTENCE STRUCTURE L9.1 – "DASS"-CLAUSES

What are "DASS" – Clauses?.....	232
Verbs with „DASS“ – Complements.....	232
„DASS“ or „OB“?.....	233
Word order.....	233
Summary	234



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/sent.structureL9-1/>

WHAT ARE DASS – CLAUSES?

Dass-clauses are subordinate clauses → Verb at the end.

Clauses with "dass" describe a situation or action necessary for the main clause to make sense.

- It takes the place of a complement: a grammatically necessary part of a sentence, which is needed for the sentence to make sense.
- The main clause doesn't make sense without the subordinate clause. Therefore, dass-clauses are also known as clause complements.

VERBS WITH DASS – COMPLEMENTS

Dass-clauses are required for certain verbs and expressions:

1. When something is known or believed:

- „Ich weiß, **dass** du gestern bei Maria warst!“
- „Ich bin mir sicher, **dass** du das besser kannst.“
- „Ich glaube, **dass** Mark in mich verliebt ist.“

Also: denken, meinen, vermuten, der Meinung sein, hoffen, ...

2. For Thoughts / Feelings / Opinions:

- „Ich finde, **dass** ihr mehr Deutsch lernen solltet.“
- „Ich finde es gut, **dass** du viel Sport machst.“
- „Es ist wichtig, **dass** du jeden Tag Deutsch lernst.“
- „Es tut mir leid, **dass** ich dich angeschrien habe.“
- „Ich freue mich, **dass** du die Prüfung bestanden hast.“
- „Ich habe Angst, **dass** du mich verlässt.“

3. For indirect speech = repeating what was already said:

- „Er sagt, **dass** er zu Hause sei.“
- „Sie haben geantwortet, **dass** sie bei Oma gewesen wären.“

Dass-clauses express an action or situation. Without that expression, the main clause doesn't make sense or might leave some questions open.

Additionally, the speaker is **always relatively sure** about what he's saying.

“DASS” OR “OB”?

When the speaker isn't sure, "ob" must be used:

- „Ich habe keine Ahnung, **ob** ich die Prüfung schaffen werde.“
- „Jan überprüft, **ob** er noch genug Geld auf dem Konto hat.“

Some verbs express certainty or uncertainty:

- „Er sagt, **dass** du gestern bei Oma warst.“ (certain)
- „Er sagt mir nicht, **ob** du gestern bei Oma warst.“ (uncertain)
- „Ich weiß, **dass** du mich liebst.“ (certain)
- „Ich weiß nicht, **ob** du mich liebst.“ (uncertain)

WORD ORDER

They are subordinate clauses. Therefore, the verb goes at the end:

Main Clause	Subordinate Clause
Es ist wichtig	, dass du gesund <u>bist</u> .
Ich weiß nicht	, ob du gesund <u>bist</u> .
Subordinate Clause	Main Clause
Dass du gesund <u>bist</u>	, ist wichtig.
Ob du gesund <u>bist</u>	, weiß ich nicht.

(This example with the subordinate clause in P1 only occurs rarely.)

SUMMARY

- Dass-clauses are clause complements. Without them, the sentence doesn't make sense at all.
- The verb is at the end.
- They are used for expressing feelings/opinions/ judgments/thoughts/knowledge and for indirect speech.
- A dass-clause expresses relative certainty about what the speaker is saying.
- Uncertainty can be expressed with "ob".

SENTENCE STRUCTURE L9.2 – CAUSAL CLAUSES (WEIL, DA)

What are Causal Clauses?	236
„WEIL“ or „DA“?	236
Special Characteristics	237
Summary	237



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/sent.structureL9-2/>

WHAT ARE CAUSAL CLAUSES?

Causal clauses are subordinate clauses.

They specify the reason or cause of something.

The question words are: "Warum?", "Wieso?", "Weshalb?", "Aus welchem Grund?"

"Weswegen?" They are introduced by the conjunctions "weil" or "da".

A: „**Warum** bist du 1 Stunde zu spät?“

B: „**Weil** ich den Bus verpasst habe.“

“WEIL“ OR “DA“?

If the main clause precedes the subordinate clause, "weil" is used.

- „**Warum** hast du keine Übungen gemacht?“
„Ich habe keine Übungen gemacht, **weil** ich keine Lust habe.“
- „**Wieso** arbeitet Stefan heute nicht?“
„Stefan arbeitet nicht, **weil** er krank ist.“

If the subordinate clause precedes the main clause, "da" is used.

- „**Warum** hast du keine Übungen gemacht?“
„**Da** ich keine Lust habe, habe ich keine Übungen gemacht.“
- „**Wieso** arbeitet Stefan heute nicht?“
„**Da** er krank ist, arbeitet Stefan heute nicht.“

The conjunction "weil" means the same as "da".

In informal language, "da" is often used when the subordinate clause precedes the main clause. This order (SC + MC) is used when the action (in the SC) is highlighted.

**ATTENTION**

These are just suggestions about when to use "da" and when to use "weil". In terms of grammar and correctness, you can start a sentence with "weil". It's no problem at all.

SPECIAL CHARACTERISTICS

Subordinate clauses beginning with "weil" or "da" can also stand-alone without connecting to a main clause.

This only works if the question is clear.

- „*Warum* bist du nicht in der Schule?“
„*Weil* die Schule heute ausfällt.“
- „*Aus welchem Grund* fährt er Bus?“
„*Weil* sein Auto kaputt ist.“

SUMMARY

- Causal clauses are subordinate clauses that state the reason or cause of something.
- The question words are: Warum? Wieso? Weshalb? Aus welchem Grund? Weswegen? (These all mean the same thing)
- Causal clauses begin with "weil" or "da".
- There's no difference between "weil" and "da", but we usually use "da" when the subordinate clause precedes the main clause. Otherwise, we use "weil".

SENTENCE STRUCTURE L9.3 – CONCESSIVE CLAUSES (OBWOHL)

WHAT ARE CONCESSIVE CLAUSES?

Concessive clauses are subordinate clauses.

With a concessive clause, one expresses an objection or a non-logical consequence to the statement of the main clause.

The concessive conjunctions are: "obwohl" and "obgleich".



COMPARISON: CAUSAL VS. CONCESSIVE

Causal (= logically connected)

- „Ich **habe** die Prüfung bestanden, **weil** ich viel gelernt **hatte**.“

Logical Consequence

Condition

- „**Weil** ich viel Geld **habe**, **kaufe** ich mir ein neues Auto.“

Condition

Logical Consequence

Concessive (= opposing arguments)

- „Ich habe die Prüfung nicht bestanden, **obwohl** ich viel gelernt **hatte**.“

Unexpected Consequence

Condition

- „**Obwohl** ich viel Geld **habe**, **kaufe** ich mir kein neues Auto.“

Condition

Unexpected Consequence

SUMMARY

- Concessive clauses are subordinate clauses and express an objection or a non-logical consequence to the statement of the main clause.
- An expectation, therefore, has not been matched.
- The conjunctions are "obwohl" and "obgleich" (There is no difference between "obwohl" and "obgleich", but "obwohl" is more common to use).

SENT. STRUCTURE L 9.4 – CONDITIONAL CLAUSES (WENN, FALLS)

What are Conditional Clauses?	240
Difference between “WENN”, “FALLS” and “SOFERN”	240
In the Past	240
Word Order	241
Summary	242



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/sent.structureL9-4/>

WHAT ARE CONDITIONAL CLAUSES?

A conditional clause specifies a condition or circumstance that must be fulfilled for an action to take place.

The question words are: "Wann?", "Unter welcher Bedingung?"

Conditional clauses can be introduced by "wenn", "falls", and "sofern".

- „**Wann** kommst du nach Hause?“
„Ich **komme** nach Hause, **wenn** ich mit der Arbeit fertig **bin**.“

Conditional clauses are subordinate clauses (SC), so the verb needs to be at the end.

The subordinate clause states the conditions that are necessary for the main clause (MC) to occur.

- „**Wenn** das Wetter schön **ist**, **gehe** ich morgen spazieren.“

Condition (SC)

Main Clause

→ If the weather is bad, I won't go for a walk.

DIFFERENCE BETWEEN "WENN", "FALLS" AND "SOFERN"

The difference between "wenn", "falls" and "sofern" lies in the probabilities.

For "falls" and "sofern", the probability for the condition to be fulfilled is relatively small.

- „**Falls/Sofern** ich keine Zeit **habe**, **gebe** ich dir Bescheid!“
→ I probably have time.
- „**Wenn** ich keine Zeit **habe**, ...“ (= neuter)

IN THE PAST

When talking about the past, it is not possible to fulfill the conditions yet.

Therefore, we must use "Konjunktiv 2" to express the unreal things.

- „**Wenn** ich mehr gelernt **hätte**, **hätte** ich die Prüfung **bestanden**.“

I already failed the exam. Therefore, the conditions are unreal because it is impossible to fulfill them. → Konjunktiv 2

WORD ORDER

When the main clause comes before the subordinate clause, everything remains the same:

- „Ich **helfe** dir, **wenn** du für mich das Geschirr **abwäschst**.“

BUT: Normally, the subordinate clause comes first because the conditions are the most important information in the sentence.

- „**Wenn** du für mich das Geschirr **abwäschst**, **helfe** ich dir.“

When the subordinate clause comes before the main clause, you can omit "wenn". The conjugated verb then moves to position 1.

- „**Wenn** du zu spät **kommst**, **gibt** es Ärger.“
= „**Kommst** du zu spät, gibt es Ärger.“
- „**Wenn** du mich **anlügst**, **bekommst** du eine Woche Hausarrest!“
= „**Lügst** du mich **an**, **bekommst** du eine Woche Hausarrest!“



Warning

If you omit "wenn", it sounds more like a warning or a threat.

SUMMARY

- Conditional clauses are a type of subordinate clause.
- They state a condition that has to be fulfilled for the other action to take place.
- When talking about the past, this only works with the Konjunktiv 2.
- Typically, the subordinate clause comes before the main clause. However, in this case, it is possible to omit "wenn". Therefore, the conjugate verb moves to position 1.

SENT. STRUCTURE L 9.5 – FINAL CLAUSES (DAMIT, UM... ZU)

What are Final Clauses?	244
Final Clauses with "DAMIT"	244
Final Clauses with Infinitive Construction	244
Comparison "DAMIT" / "UM...ZU..."	245
Characteristics.....	245
Summary	246



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/sent.structureL9-5/>

WHAT ARE FINAL CLAUSES?

Final clauses are used to describe a purpose, an intention, or a goal.

The question words are: „Wozu?“, „Wofür?“, „Zu welchem Zweck?“, „Mit welcher Absicht?“, „Mit welchem Ziel?“

They can be constructed with the infinitive construction "um... zu..." or with a standard subordinate clause and the conjunction "damit".

FINAL CLAUSES WITH "DAMIT"

A final clause with "damit" is a subordinate clause. Usually, the subordinate clause comes after the main clause, but it is possible to put it before. Additionally, the final clause with "damit" can also stand alone when the situation is obvious.

- **Wofür arbeitest du so viel?**

„Ich **arbeite** so viel, **damit** ich mir den Urlaub leisten **kann**.“

„**Damit** ich mir den Urlaub leisten **kann**, **arbeite** ich so viel.“

„**Damit** ich mir den Urlaub leisten **kann**.“

- **Wofür lernst du Deutsch?**

„Ich **lerne** Deutsch, **damit** ich einen Job in Deutschland finden **kann**.“

„**Damit** ich einen Job in Deutschland finden **kann**, **lerne** ich Deutschl.“

„**Damit** ich einen Job in Deutschland finden **kann**.“

FINAL CLAUSES WITH INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTION

A final clause with "um... zu..." is an infinitive clause.

It is always possible to form a final clause with "damit". However, we can form an infinitive clause only if the subject in both clauses is the same.

In the infinitive clause, the subject is then omitted.

"Um" is after the comma, and "zu" + infinitive is at the end of the sentence.

- „Ich **arbeite** so viel, **um** mir den Urlaub leisten **zu können**.“

COMPARISON "DAMIT" / "UM...ZU..."

Wozu braucht man ein Auto?

- Man kann in den Urlaub fahren. // You can go on vacation.
 „**Man** braucht ein Auto, **um** in den Urlaub fahren **zu können**.“
 „**Man** braucht ein Auto, **damit man** in den Urlaub fahren **kann**.“
- Man muss nicht zur Arbeit laufen.
 „**Man** braucht ein Auto, **um** nicht zur Arbeit laufen **zu müssen**.“
 „**Man** braucht ein Auto, **damit man** nicht zur Arbeit laufen **muss**.“

Wozu baut China einen großen Staudamm?

- Die Menschen können den Strom nutzen.
 „**China** baut einen großen Staudamm, **damit die Menschen** Strom nutzen **können**.“

Um...zu... isn't possible here because the subject in each sentence is different ("China" and "die Menschen").

More info in the lesson: Infinitive Constructions

CHARACTERISTICS

The Modal Verbs "sollen", "möchten" and "wollen" can't be used to form a final clause because they already express a goal, an intention, or a purpose. However, they can be exchanged with "können", and they can be omitted.

Wofür brauche ich viel Geld? – Ich will viel reisen.

- „Ich brauche viel Geld, **um** viel **reisen zu können**.“
- „Ich brauche viel Geld, **um** viel **zu reisen**.“

SUMMARY

- Final clauses describe a goal, a purpose, or an intention.
- The question words are: "Wozu?", "Wofür?", "Zu welchem Zweck?", „Mit welcher Absicht?", „Mit welchem Ziel?"
- We form final clauses with "um... zu..." or "damit".
- The modal verbs "sollen", "möchten" and "wollen" can't be used in final clauses since they already express a goal, a purpose, or an intention.

SENT. STRUCTURE L 9.6 – CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES (SO DASS)

What are Consecutive Clauses?	248
Separable Version.....	248
Other Versions	248
Summary	249



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/sent.structureL9-6/>

WHAT ARE CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES?

Consecutive clauses are subordinate clauses.

We use consecutive clauses to express the consequences of an action that occurred in the past. The main clause must come before the subordinate clause.

- „Es **regnete** zu wenig, **so dass** viele Menschen kein Wasser zum Trinken **hatten**.“

SEPARABLE VERSION

The "so" can also be placed in front of the adjective in the main clause.

- „Es **hat so** wenig **geregnet**, **dass** viele Menschen kein Wasser zum Trinken **hatten**.“
- „Ich **habe so** viel **gelernt**, **dass** ich die Prüfung ohne Probleme **bestanden habe**.“
- „Es **hat so** viel **geregnet**, **dass** die Stadt vom Fluss **überschwemmt wurde**.“

→ This version is more common.

The separable version is only possible when there is an adjective in the main clause that relates to the subordinate clause:

- „Ich habe vergessen meine schönen Blumen zu gießen, **so dass** ich mir jetzt neue Blumen kaufen muss.“

Also, there can't be any other adverb in front of the adjective:

- „Es war **zu** kalt, **so dass** ich nicht spazieren gehen konnte.“

OTHER VERSIONS

It is possible to express the same idea with the consecutive adverbs: "also", "daher", "darum", "deswegen", "deshalb", "folglich", "infolgedessen".

- „Es regnete zu viel. **Darum** konnte ich nicht spazieren gehen.“

In this case, it isn't a consecutive clause because the statement is then formed with two main clauses.

SUMMARY

- Consecutive clauses are subordinate clauses.
- Consecutive clauses express the consequences of an action that occurred in the past. The conjunction is: "so dass".
- "So" can also be placed in front of an adjective in the main clause.
- The same idea can be expressed with the consecutive adverbs "also", "daher", "darum", "deswegen", "deshalb", "folglich", "infolgedessen".

SENT. STRUCTURE L 9.7 – MODAL CLAUSES (INDEM)

What are Modal Clauses?	251
“indem” and “dadurch dass...”	251
“ohne dass” and “ohne zu”	251
“anstatt dass” and “anstatt zu”	252
Summary	252



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/sent.structureL9-7/>

WHAT ARE MODAL CLAUSES?

Modal clauses are subordinate clauses.

They describe how something was done or how something occurred.

The question words are: "Wie?", "Wodurch?", "Auf welche Art und Weise?"

The conjunctions are "indem" and "dadurch/ohne/anstatt dass...".

They can also be formed with the infinitives "ohne... zu..." and "anstatt... zu...".

"INDEM" AND "DADURCH DASS..."

"Indem" and "dadurch dass" explain the direct way how the goal was reached.

How can someone become a millionaire?

- „Man kann Millionär werden, **indem** man im Lotto **gewinnt**.“
- „Man kann Millionär werden, **dadurch dass** man hart **arbeitet**.“
- „Man kann **dadurch** Millionär werden, **dass** man etwas **erbt**.“

What's the goal? → **How do I reach that goal?**

"Dadurch dass" can be separated like "sodass" (Consecutive Clauses). The main clause **MUST** come before the subordinate clause, and "dadurch" comes in front of the goal that should be reached.

"OHNE DASS" AND "OHNE ZU"

"Ohne dass" and "ohne... zu..." specify a restriction.

"Ohne dass" is a normal subordinate clause, and "ohne... zu..." is an infinitive construction.

- „Ich gehe an den Strand, **ohne dass** ich eine Badehose **trage**.“
- „Ich gehe an den Strand, **ohne** eine Badehose **zu tragen**.“

"Ohne... zu..." can only be used when the same subject is used within the main clause and the subordinate clause. (More info in "Infinitive Constructions").

“ANSTATT DASS” AND “ANSTATT ZU”

"Anstatt dass" and "anstatt... zu..." describe an alternative to the happening in the main clause.

"Anstatt dass" is a normal subordinate clause, and "anstatt... zu..." is an infinitive construction.

- „Ich schwimme im Pool, **anstatt dass** ich im Meer schwimmen **gehe**.“
- „Ich schwimme im Pool, **anstatt** im Meer schwimmen **zu gehen**.“
„Ich schwimme im Pool und nicht im Meer.“

"Anstatt... zu..." can only be used when the same subject is used within the main clause and the subordinate clause.

SUMMARY

- Modal clauses are subordinate clauses that are formed by using "indem", "dadurch dass", "ohne/anstatt das" and "ohne/anstatt... zu..."
- They describe how something was done or how it has occurred.
- The question words are: "Wie?", "Wodurch?", "Auf welche Art und Weise?".
- We can form infinitive constructions with "ohne/anstatt... zu..."

SENT. STRUCTURE L 9.8A – TEMPORAL CLAUSES

What are Temporal Clauses?	254
“seit / seitdem”	254
“bis”	254
“während”	254
“solange”	255
“nachdem”	255
“bevor” / “ehe”	256
“sobald” / “sowie”	256
Summary	257



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/sent.structureL9-8a/>

WHAT ARE TEMPORAL CLAUSES?

Temporal clauses are subordinate clauses.

They always begin with a temporal conjunction.

Temporal clauses give information about the beginning, the end, and the duration of an action. They can also show whether two actions occur simultaneously or not.

"SEIT / SEITDEM"

Meaning: A state or an action has begun in the past and is not yet finished.

- „Ich lerne Deutsch, **seitdem** ich in Deutschland **wohne**.“
→ Both actions and state have begun at the same time and are not finished yet.
- „**Seitdem** ich einen Unfall **hatte**, **sitze** ich im Rollstuhl.“
→ When the action in the subordinate clause has already occurred, we use the past tense. The main clause always uses the present tense.

"BIS"

Meaning: "Bis" expresses the simultaneity of two actions and specifies a point in time when both will end.

- „Ich bleibe hier, **bis** ich mit meiner Arbeit fertig **bin**.“
 - „**Bis** du mit der Arbeit fertig **bist**, **sehe** ich ein bisschen **fern**.“
 - „Ich warte hier auf dich, **bis** du wieder **zurückkommst**.“
- Two actions end at the same time.

"WÄHREND"

Meaning: Two actions occur simultaneously

- „Ich gehe einkaufen, **während** du die Wohnung **aufräumst**.“
- „**Während** du Computer spielst, **lerne** ich.“

→ The actions take place at the same time.

“SOLANGE”

Meaning: Expresses simultaneity and that both actions are guaranteed to end simultaneously or within the same period of time.

- „Ich werde putzen, **solange** ihr eure Hausaufgaben **macht**.“
- „**Solange** du bei mir **bist**, **habe** ich keine Angst.“

→ Both actions end at the same time.

“NACHDEM”

Meaning: "Nachdem" expresses that something does not happen at the same time. The action in the main clause occurs after the action in the subordinate clause has already ended.

Main Clause (MC)	Subordinate Clause (SC)
Futur	nachdem + Perfekt/Präteritum
Präsens	nachdem + Perfekt/Präteritum
Perfekt/Präteritum	nachdem + Plusquamperfekt

A subordinate clause with "nachdem" must always be one time step before the main clause.

„Ich **werde** dir **helfen**, **nachdem** du den Müll **rausgebracht hast**.“

MC = Futur

SC = Perfekt

„Ich **helfe** dir, **nachdem** du den Müll **rausgebracht hast**.“

MC = Präsens

SC = Perfekt

„Ich **habe** dir **geholfen**, **nachdem** du den Müll **rausgebracht hattest**.“

MC = Perfekt

SC = Plusquamperfekt

“BEVOR” / “EHE”

Meaning: "bevor"/"ehe" expresses that something does not happen at the same time. The action in the main clause needs to take place before the one in the subordinate clause.

- „Ich putze mir die Zähne, **bevor/ehe** ich schlafen **gehe**.“
- „**Bevor/ehe** du Computer spielst, **machst** du deine Hausaufgaben.“

"Bevor" is used much more often than "ehe".

"Bevor" and "ehe" are both opposites of "nachdem."

“SOBALD” / “SOWIE”

Meaning: "Sobald" and "sowie" express that something does not or did not happen at the same time. It is a sequence of two actions. The action of the subordinate clause ends when the action of the main clause begins.

Main Clause (MC)	Subordinate Clause (SC)
Futur	sobald + Perfekt/Präteritum
Präsens	sobald + Perfekt/Präteritum
Perfekt/Präteritum	sobald + Plusquamperfekt

Therefore, the subordinate clause with "solange / sowie" has to be one time step before the main clause.

„Ich **werde** dir **helfen**, **sobald/sowie** du den Müll **rausgebracht hast**.“



„Ich **helfe** dir, **sobald/sowie** du den Müll **rausgebracht hast**.“



„Ich **habe** dir **geholfen**, **sobald/sowie** du den Müll **rausgebracht hattest**.“



Difference from "nachdem":

If you use "sobald/sowie", the second action starts right after the first one is finished. On the other hand, if you use "nachdem", it just happens at any point after the first action is completed.

SUMMARY

Conjunction	Meaning
während	Two simultaneous actions
solange	Two simultaneous actions starting and ending at the same time
bis	Two simultaneous actions that have the same endpoint. (point in time)
seit / seitdem	Actions that started in the past and are not yet completed.
nachdem	The action in the main clause takes place AFTER the one in the subordinate clause.
sobald / sowie	Two actions that don't occur at the same time. (The second action starts directly after the first)
bevor / ehe	The action in the main clause takes place BEFORE the one in the subordinate clause.

SENT. STRUCTURE L 9.8B – TEMPORAL CLAUSES (WENN OR ALS?)

“wenn” or “als”?	259
In The Future	259
Present Tense	259
In The Past	260
Special Characteristics	260
Summary	260



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/sent.structureL9-8b/>

"WENN" OR "ALS"?

"Wenn" and "als" both express that two things occurred simultaneously at a specific point in time.

We use "als" for something that occurred once in the past.

In the future and present, we always use "wenn".

"Wenn" is also used when something has happened more than once in the past.

In The Future

In the future: always "wenn".

- „Ich werde immer glücklich sein, **wenn** du mich **besuchst**.“
→ Each time
- „Ich werde froh sein, **wenn** du gesund wieder **zurückkommst**.“
→ Occurs just once

**ATTENTION**

"Wenn" can be seen as a condition (conditional clause) or a point in time (temporal clause), depending on the context of the sentence

Present Tense

In the present tense: always "wenn".

- „Ich komme nach Hause, **wenn** ich mit der Arbeit fertig **bin**.“
→ Once
- „(Immer) **wenn** ich nach Hause **laufe**, komme ich am Kino vorbei.“
→ Often (again and again)

**ATTENTION**

"Wenn" can be a condition as well, depending on the focus of the sentence.

In The Past

When speaking about the past, you have to choose between "wenn" and "als".

- „**Als** ich ein Kind **war**, habe ich hier immer Fußball gespielt.“
→ I was a child only once. → als
- „(Immer) **wenn** ich in Berlin **war**, sind wir feiern gewesen.“
→ I partied in Berlin more than once. → wenn
- „Heute bin ich schon im Büro gewesen, **als** du angekommen **bist**.“
→ Today, you arrived at the office only once. → als

SPECIAL CHARACTERISTICS

Subordinate clauses beginning with "wenn" or "als" can also stand-alone without being connected to a main clause. This only works when the question is clear.

- „**Wann** kommst du nach Hause?“
„**Wenn** ich mit der Arbeit fertig bin.“
- „**Wann** hast du dich mit Tim getroffen?“
„**Als** ich in Berlin war.“

SUMMARY

Time	Wenn or als?
Future	Always "wenn"
Present	Always "wenn"
Past	Once – "als" More than once – "wenn"

If there's no question, the subordinate clause usually comes before the main clause. If you can answer the question about when something occurred, the subordinate clause can stand alone.

SENTENCE STRUCTURE L9.9 – RELATIVE CLAUSES

What are Relative Clauses?	262
Relative Clauses with „DER, DIE, DAS, WELCHE“	262
Relative Clauses with “WO”	262
Relative Clauses with “WAS”	263
Summary	263



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/sent.structureL9-9/>

WHAT ARE RELATIVE CLAUSES?

Relative clauses give extra information without beginning a new sentence.

Relative clauses are subordinate clauses and are surrounded by commas. They are introduced by relative pronouns.

Relative clauses usually refer to a noun and come directly after it.

- „Das ist der Mann, **der** einen Ferrari hat.“

RELATIVE CLAUSES WITH “DER, DIE, DAS, WELCHE”

If we give additional information about a person or a thing, we use the relative pronouns der, die, das and welche.

You have to decline them:

- „Das ist **der Mann**, **der** (welcher) einen Ferrari hat.“

Relative pronouns are declined in the same way as demonstrative pronouns. I show you the different forms of relative pronouns and a step-by-step guide on how to determine the correct case in the lesson: **Relative Pronouns**.

RELATIVE CLAUSES WITH “WO”

If the relative clause describes a place, we often use the relative pronoun "wo".

- „Gehen wir in das neue **Restaurant**? **Dort** gibt es Sushi!“
- „Gehen wir in das neue **Restaurant**, **in dem** es Sushi gibt?“
- „Gehen wir in das neue **Restaurant**, **wo** es Sushi gibt?“

The "wo" replaces the relative pronoun + preposition.



Advice:

In informal language, "wo" is used almost all the time.

RELATIVE CLAUSES WITH "WAS"

Relative clauses can also describe demonstrative pronouns and indefinite pronouns. When it is a neuter superlative, something unspecified (etwas, alles, nichts,...), or an entire clause, we use "was".

Neuter Superlative:

- „Das ist **das Beste**, **was** ich jemals gemacht habe.“

Indefinite Pronouns:

- „Der Mann sagt **nichts**, **was** von Bedeutung ist.“ (Nominative)
 „Ich sehe **etwas**, **was** du nicht siehst.“ (Accusative)
 → Here we could use "das" as well.

Entire Clause:

- „Er spielt in der Wohnung Schlagzeug, **was** die Nachbarn stört.“

In this case, it isn't possible to include a preposition. However, the relative clause related to an entire sentence is usually formed with wo(r)+preposition.

- „Er hat mir geholfen, **wofür** ich ihm sehr dankbar bin.“

In informal speech, we would rather just say:

- „Er hat mir geholfen. **Dafür** bin ich ihm sehr dankbar.“

Both mean: He has helped me. For that, I am very thankful.

SUMMARY

- Relative clauses give more information without having to start a new sentence.
- Relative clauses usually describe a noun and come directly after it.
- They can also describe an entire sentence, though this doesn't occur too often in the spoken German language.
- In addition to relative pronouns, there are also the versions: "wo", "was" and "wo(r)" + Preposition.

SENTENCE STRUCTURE L10.1 – COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

What are Coordinating Conjunctions?	265
Connecting Main Clauses.....	265
Connecting Subordinate Clauses	265
Connecting Words, phrases, Elements	266
Overviews of Meanings	266
Summary	267



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/sent.structureL10-1/>

WHAT ARE COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS?

Coordinating conjunctions combine equal elements with each other: main clauses with main clauses, subordinate clauses with subordinate clauses, words with words, phrases with phrases, and sentence elements with sentence elements.

The coordinating conjunctions are: "denn", "und", "oder", "aber", "doch", and "sondern".

- „Tanja **und** Boris sehen fern.“
- „Fahren wir zu Oma **oder** bleiben wir zu Hause?“

CONNECTING MAIN CLAUSES

When used to combine two main clauses, the conjunction is always in position 0. Therefore, they do not belong to either sentence.

The structures of the clauses remain the same.

	Conjunction	Subject	Verb	
„Das Auto ist schon sehr alt,	aber	es	ist	in einem guten Zustand.“
1. Hauptsatz				2. Hauptsatz
„Wir nehmen den Bus,	denn	es	gibt	keinen Zug.“

If the verbs and/or subjects in both main clauses are the same, you can simply omit them.

Exception: "denn"

- „Ich mache eine Suppe **oder** (ich) (mache) ein Schnitzel.“
- „Ich lerne viel, **denn** morgen **habe ich** eine Prüfung.“
- „Max möchte keinen Kuchen, **sondern** (Max) (möchte) ein Eis.“

CONNECTING SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

"Und" and "oder" can also combine subordinate clauses. All rules of subordinating conjunctions apply for the connected clause as well.

- „Ich bin böse, weil du zu spät gekommen **bist und** (du) dich nicht entschuldigt hast.“
- „Er ist glücklich, weil er im Lotto gewonnen **hat und** (er) seine Prüfung bestanden hat.“

This also applies here: If the verbs and/or subjects in both main clauses are similar, then you can simply omit them.

CONNECTING WORDS, PHRASES, ELEMENTS

Subordinating conjunctions can connect whole sentences as well as individual words, groups of words, or phrases.

Exception: "denn" can only connect two main clauses, nothing else.

- „Hans und Udo gehen am Wochenende zum Fußball.“
- „Ich bin kein Fan vom FC Bayern, **sondern** von Borussia Dortmund.“
- „Trinkst du Kaffee lieber mit oder ohne Milch?“
- „Mit Zucker, **aber** ohne Milch.“

OVERVIEWS OF MEANINGS

Function		Conjunction	
Limiting / Opposites	Ich mag Tee nicht	, aber	Kaffee sehr.
	Du magst Kaffee	, doch	keinen Tee.
Reason	Ich gehe schlafen	, denn	ich bin müde.
List	Ich kaufe Saft	und	Käse.
Alternatives	Ich kaufe Bier	oder	Wein.
Contradiction / Correction	Ich habe den Laptop nicht benutzt	, sondern	mein Bruder.

SUMMARY

- Coordinating conjunctions connect things of equal range (i.e., main clause and main clause, subordinate clause, and subordinate clause) and have no influence on the sentence structure.
- They are in position 0.
- "Denn", "aber", "doch", "und", "oder" and "sondern" are subordinating conjunctions with different meanings.
- "Denn", "aber", "doch" and "sondern" require a comma. "Und" and "oder" do not require one.

SENTENCE STRUCTURE L10.2 – SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

What are Subordinating Conjunctions?	269
The Most Important Subordinating Conjunctions	269
Word Order	269
Summary	269



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/sent.structureL10-2/>

WHAT ARE SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS?

Subordinating conjunctions connect main clauses and subordinate clauses. Thus, subordinating conjunctions always introduce a subordinate clause and are separated by a comma.

Examples:

- „Ich fahre zu Oma, **weil** ich lange nicht mehr da **war**.“
- „Ich weiß, **dass** du gelogen **hast**.“

THE MOST IMPORTANT SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

- | | |
|---------------|------------------|
| • wenn / als | • indem |
| • bevor / ehe | • wenn / falls |
| • bis | • nachdem |
| • weil | • obwohl |
| • damit | • seit / seitdem |
| • dass | • sooft |
| • sodass | • wohingegen |
| • solange | |

WORD ORDER

- „Ich fahre zu Oma, **weil** ich lange nicht mehr da **war**.“
- „Ich weiß, **dass** du gelogen **hast**.“

Only the conjugated verb is at the very end of the sentence.

The subject, reflexive pronouns, the time,... EVERYTHING ELSE remains where it is!

SUMMARY

- Subordinating conjunctions connect main clauses and subordinate clauses with each other and send the verb to the end of the clause.
- The subordinate clause cannot stand alone. If you can't determine which clause is the main clause and which one is the subordinate one, you need to know which conjunctions require the verb to be at the end.

SENTENCE STRUCTURE L10.3 – MULTIPART CONJUNCTIONS

What are Multipart Conjunctions?	271
The different Multipart Conjunctions?	271
Word Order	272
Summary	272



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/sent.structureL10-3/>

WHAT ARE MULTIPART CONJUNCTIONS?

Multipart conjunctions are a subset of coordinating conjunctions.

They do not influence word order and always connect main clauses with each other.

They consist of at least two parts.

- „Ich war **sowohl** in Indien **als auch** in China.“

THE DIFFERENT MULTIPART CONJUNCTIONS?

"sowohl... als auch..."

Meaning: double enumeration

- „Meine Freundin sollte **sowohl** hübsch **als auch** intelligent sein.“

"nicht nur... sondern auch..."

Meaning: double enumeration

- „Max war **nicht nur** in Brasilien **sondern auch** in Kolumbien.“

"weder... noch..."

Meaning: double negation

- „Max war **weder** in Brasilien **noch** in Kolumbien.“

"zwar..., aber..."

Meaning: opposites (positive → ← negative)

- „Meine Auto ist **zwar** fast neu, **aber** leider schon wieder in der Werkstatt.“

"entweder... oder..."

Meaning: alternatives

- „Max will **entweder** nach Brasilien **oder** nach Peru fliegen.“

WORD ORDER

Usually, we place conjunctions before the words or phrases to which they refer. "Entweder", "Zwar" and "weder" may, however, be placed on position 1 for special emphasis.

"zwar..., aber...":

- „**Zwar** ist meine Freundin hübsch, **aber** nicht sehr intelligent.“
- „Meine Freundin ist **zwar** hübsch, **aber** nicht sehr intelligent.“

"entweder...oder...":

- „**Entweder** fahre ich nach Brasilien **oder** nach Kolumbien.“
- „Ich fahre **entweder** nach Brasilien **oder** nach Kolumbien.“

"weder...noch...":

- „**Weder** fahre ich nach Brasilien **noch** nach Kolumbien.“
- „Ich fahre **weder** nach Brasilien **noch** nach Kolumbien.“

SUMMARY

- Multipart conjunctions are a special form of coordinating conjunctions.
- They consist of at least two parts and have different meanings.
- They are typically placed directly in front of the word or sentence element that they are related to.

SENTENCE STRUCTURE L10.4 – CONJUNCTIVE ADVERBS

What are Conjunctive Adverbs?	274
Conjunctive Adverbs vs. Conjunctions	274
The Conjunctive Adverbs	275
Summary	275



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/sent.structureL10-4/>

WHAT ARE CONJUNCTIVE ADVERBS?

- Conjunctive adverbs are adverbs that connect sentences, clauses, words, and phrases with each other.
- The difference between conjunctions and conjunctive adverbs is that conjunctive adverbs are a part of the sentence while conjunctions are not.
- They usually are in position 1. When they are somewhere else in the sentence, they are being used as a modal, causal, temporal or local adverb. In this case, their connecting character is not so important.

CONJUNCTIVE ADVERBS VS. CONJUNCTIONS

The difference between conjunctive adverbs and conjunctions:

Conjunctions are in position 0, adverbs in position 1

→ „Anna kommt später und Jan kommt auch später.“

Conjunction	Subject	Verb
-------------	---------	------

→ „Anna kommt später, außerdem kommt Jan auch später.“

Conjunctionadverb	Verb	Subject
-------------------	------	---------

Conjunctive adverbs **never** send the verb to the end.

THE MOST IMPORTANT CONJUNCTIVE ADVERBS

Meaning	Conjunctive Adverb
Copulative (adding)	außerdem, zudem, dazu, daneben, darüber hinaus, desgleichen, ebenso, ferner, weiter, zusätzlich
Place (locative)	daneben, darüber, darunter, dazwischen
Time (temporal)	davor, währenddessen, indessen, danach, anschließend
Reason (causal)	folglich, demzufolge, demnach, damit, somit, mithin, also, deswegen, deshalb, daher
Consequence (consecutive)	also, demzufolge, folglich, infolgedessen, mithin, so, somit, deswegen, deshalb
Opposed (adversative)	jedoch, doch, dagegen, stattdessen, hingegen, allerdings, dennoch, indes, indessen, vielmehr, demgegenüber, stattdessen
Limiting (restrictive)	insofern, nur, freilich, allerdings, indessen
Conceding (concessive)	trotzdem, dennoch, dessen ungeachtet, gleichwohl, immerhin, allerdings, sowieso, demzufolge

SUMMARY

- Conjunctive adverbs are sentence elements, while conjunctions are not.
- They don't necessarily have to be in position 1. However, when they are not in that position, they are often used as modal, causal, temporal, or local adverbs.

SENTENCE STRUCTURE L 11 – INFINITIVE CLAUSES

What are Infinitive Clauses?	277
When do we use ZU + Infinitive?	277
Verbs that require Infinitive Clauses	279
Verbs that we can use with Infinitive Clause	279
1. All Verbs That Have a "Dass-Clause" Complement:.....	279
2. The Constructions sein/finden + Adjective or "haben" + Nouns.	279
Infinitive Clauses with Separable Verbs	280
Verbs without Infinitive Clauses	280
Word Order & Commas	281
Summary	281



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/sent.structureL11/>

WHAT ARE INFINITIVE CLAUSES?

Infinitive clauses are sentences in which the verb isn't conjugated but remains in its infinitive form, i.e., the basic form.

An infinitive clause is a subordinate clause and has no subject of its own. The subject is only in the main clause. Therefore, the subject, the accusative complement, or the dative complement of the main clause has to be similar to the subject of the subordinate clause.

We use infinitive clauses after certain verbs and phrases.

We use infinitive clauses with "zu" when the verb in the main clause is directly related to the verb in the subordinate clause.

The main clause thus determines how and in what way the action of the subordinate clause is taking place.

- „Ich **versuche**, das Tor **zu treffen**.“

"Versuchen" refers to the verb "treffen" in the subordinate clause. That's why we have to use the infinitive clause.

WHEN DO WE USE ZU + INFINITIVE?

After specific verbs: Verbs that are related to a second action and don't have a noun as a complement.

- „Ich **schlage vor**, heute Abend ins Kino **zu gehen**.“
→ I propose an action: "gehen" → zu + Infinitive

The same idea can also be expressed with a dass-clause:

- „Ich **schlage vor**, **dass** wir heute Abend ins Kino gehen.“

When the subject in the subordinate clause isn't important (because it is already known or only a specific meaning is possible), we can always use an infinitive clause + zu.

When the subject has to be mentioned because a lot of people or plenty of things are involved, we can't use infinitive + zu:

- „**Ich** hoffe, dass **er** bald perfekt Deutsch spricht.“
- „**Ich** hoffe, dass **ich** bald perfekt Deutsch spreche.“

Because there is no subject in an infinitive clause, it only works when the subject in the infinitive clause is identical to the subject, the accusative object, or the dative object of the main clause.

- „**Ich** hoffe, bald perfekt Deutsch **zu sprechen**.“

If I want to express that somebody else will soon speak perfect German, I cannot use zu + infinitive because the subject is not the same, and as in this case, not obvious.

Examples with identical accusative or dative objects:

The accusative object is identical to the subject in the subordinate clause:

- dass: „Der Kellner bittet **den Mann**, dass **er** draußen raucht.“
- Inf.: „Der Kellner bittet den Mann, draußen zu rauchen.“

The dative object is identical to the subject in the subordinate clause:

- dass: „Der Kellner verbietet **dem Mann**, dass **er** im Restaurant raucht.“
- Inf.: „Der Kellner verbietet dem Mann, im Restaurant zu rauchen.“



Remember:

If the subject, the accusative object, and the dative object in the main clause are not identical to the subject in the subordinate clause, you cannot use zu + infinitive.

If it is the same, you can (and you should) use zu + infinitive. Infinitive clauses usually sound better because they are shorter and less complicated.

VERBS THAT REQUIRE INFINITIVE CLAUSES

All verbs that require a second action:

- *aufhören, stoppen, beginnen, anfangen, versuchen, vorhaben, warnen vor, sich weigern, ...*

→ These verbs almost always correspond to a second action and require an infinitive clause.

VERBS THAT WE CAN USE WITH INFINITIVE CLAUSE

1. All Verbs That Have a "Dass-Clause" Complement:

- *glauben, denken, meinen, hoffen, wissen, entscheiden, scheinen, ...*

→ We can only use *zu* + infinitive when the subject of the subordinate clause refers to the subject, the accusative complement, or the dative complement of the main clause.

- „*Ich hoffe, dass ich bald perfekt Deutsch spreche.*“
- „*Ich hoffe, bald perfekt Deutsch zu sprechen.*“

→ **Both versions are possible since the subject is the same.**

- „*Ich hoffe, dass du bald wieder zu Hause bist.*“

→ Only the *dass*-clause is possible because the subject of the subordinate clause is not in the main clause.

2. The Constructions *sein/finden* + Adjective or "haben" + Nouns.

- „*Ich habe Lust, mit dir ins Kino zu gehen.*“
- „*Ich finde es schwierig, die deutsche Sprache zu lernen.*“
- „*Es ist einfach, einen Job in Deutschland zu finden.*“

If the subject is not the same, these verbs require a *dass*-clause as the complement. However, it is rare, and they usually use an infinitive clause + *zu* → None of the three examples above can be formed with a *dass*-clause.

- „**Ich** finde es super, dir beim Deutschlernen helfen **zu können**.“
- „**Ich** finde es super, **dass ich** dir beim Deutschlernen helfen kann.“

In this example, both versions are possible.

It isn't obvious that the subject is the same.

It could be somebody else who is helping → a dass-clause is possible.

- „**Ich** finde es super, **dass du** mir beim Deutschlernen helfen kannst.“

No infinitive clause is possible because there are two different subjects.

INFINITIVE CLAUSES WITH SEPARABLE VERBS

With separable verbs, the "zu" needs to be between the prefix and the main part of the verb. Thus, it is all written together as one word.

- „Ich versuche, die Tür **abzuschließen**.“
- „Ich schlage vor, morgen sehr früh **aufzustehen**.“
- „Es ist schwierig, bei Lärm **einzuschlafen**.“

VERBS WITHOUT INFINITIVE CLAUSES

Some verbs are directly related to a second verb and directly influence how the action takes place. Therefore, they don't use an infinitive clause but sentence brackets.

These include all modal verbs, verbs of movement ("gehen", "fahren", "laufen", "kommen",...), and the verbs "bleiben", "lassen", "sehen" and "hören".

The auxiliary verbs "haben", "sein" and "werden" do not use an infinitive clause with "zu" either, since they have no meaning of their own and are only used to form the tense.

Examples:

- „Ich **soll** heute noch Hausaufgaben **machen**.“
(modal verb → no infinitive clause)
- „Ich **gehe** morgen mit meinem Bruder **einkaufen**.“
(gehen → no infinitive clause)

- „Ich **lasse** mein Auto in der Werkstatt **reparieren**."
(lassen → no infinitive clause)
- „Ich **werde** morgen zum ersten Mal in die Schule **gehen**."
(auxiliary verb → no infinitive clause)

WORD ORDER & COMMAS

Infinitive clauses are subordinate clauses, so the verb comes at the end.

- „Ich fange morgen an, Deutsch **zu lernen**."

The infinitive clauses must come after the main clause. SC + MC is not possible.

I recommend you to separate the infinitive clause from the main clause with a comma, but you don't have to most of the time.

SUMMARY

- Infinitive clauses are subordinate clauses.
- If the verb refers directly to a second action/verb, the infinitive + zu is used (alternative: some verbs use a dass-clause).
- This applies to all verbs except of modal verbs, gehen, fahren, bleiben, kommen, lassen, sehen, and hören.
- Since there is no subject in an infinitive clause, it only works when the subject in the dass-clause is identical to the subject, the accusative object, or the dative object in the main clause.
- The separation between the two clauses with a comma is not obligatory but is recommended.

SENTENCE STRUCTURE L 12 – INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTIONS

What are Infinitive Constructions?	283
Clauses with “um... zu...”	283
Clauses with “ohne... zu...”	283
Clauses with “anstatt... zu...”	284
Summary	285



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/sent.structureL12/>

WHAT ARE INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTIONS?

Infinitive constructions are clauses with "um...zu...", "ohne...zu..." and "(an)statt... zu...". They aren't related to the verb and each construction has its own specific meaning. But they are related to infinitive clauses because both have no subject and use the infinitive + zu form at the end of the sentence.

CLAUSES WITH "UM... ZU..."

The construction "um... zu..." expresses a purpose, intention, or goal.

Questions: Wozu? Wofür? Zu welchem Zweck?

- „**Wofür lernst du Deutsch?**“

„Ich lerne Deutsch, **um** in Deutschland arbeiten **zu können**.“

„Ich lerne Deutsch, **um** mit den Eltern von meinem Mann sprechen **zu können**.“

Condition for the use of "um... zu..." is that the subject in the main clause must be the same as that in the subordinate clause.

- „**Ich** gehe einkaufen, **damit ich** morgen etwas zum Essen im Kühlschrank habe.“
=
„**Ich** gehe einkaufen, **um** morgen etwas zum Essen im Kühlschrank **zu haben**.“
- „**Ich** spiele in eurem Team, **damit beide Teams** gleich stark sind.“

No "um... zu..." construction is possible since the subject is not the same (see also Final Clauses).

CLAUSES WITH "OHNE... ZU..."

With the construction "ohne... zu..." one expresses a negation or restriction.

- „Er hat die Party verlassen, **ohne** Tschüss **zu sagen**.“
→ He left the party without saying goodbye.

- „Er hat Deutsch gelernt, **ohne** einen Deutschkurs **zu besuchen**.“
→ He learned German without taking a German course.
- „Er ist Auto gefahren, **ohne** einen Führerschein **zu haben**.“
→ He drove even though he didn't have a driver's license.

The condition for the use of "ohne... zu..." is that the subjects of the main clause must be similar to the one of the subordinate clause.

- „**Ich** schreibe den Test, **ohne dass ich** gelernt habe.“
=
„**Ich** schreibe den Test, **ohne** gelernt **zu haben**.“
- „**Meine Tochter** ist eingeschlafen, **ohne dass ich** ihr ein Lied vorgesungen habe.“
→ No "ohne...zu..." construction is possible since the subjects are not the same.
(See also Modal Clauses)

CLAUSES WITH "ANSTATT... ZU..."

The construction "(an)statt... zu..." describes a substitute action or something not expected in that situation.

- „Ich bleibe zu Hause, **statt** mit meinen Freunden an den Strand **zu gehen**.“
→ Action not expected (I don't want to, I have to study, or ...).
- „Du solltest Hausaufgaben machen, **anstatt** den ganzen Tag Computerspiele **zu spielen**.“
→ The child (unexpectedly) hasn't done his homework and instead played computer games the whole day.

The condition for the use of "(an)statt... zu..." is that the subject of the main clause must be similar to the subject of the subordinate clause.

- „**Ich** bleibe zu Hause, **anstatt dass ich** in den Urlaub fahre.“

=

„**Ich** bleibe zu Hause, **anstatt** in den Urlaub **zu fahren**.“

I couldn't find an example that makes sense in which the two subjects aren't the same, but in case you will find one anyways, the rule still applies: The "(an)statt...zu..." construction is impossible if the subjects are not the same (see also Modal Clauses).

SUMMARY

- Infinitive constructions are subordinate clauses with "um... zu...", "ohne... zu...", or "(an)statt... zu...".
- "Um... zu..." describes a purpose, intention, or goal.
- "Ohne... zu..." states a negation or a limitation.
- "(An)statt... zu..." is a substitute action or something unexpected.
- In order to use an infinitive construction, the subjects of the main clause and subordinate clause must be the same.

VERBS

VERBS L1 – WHAT ARE VERBS?

Definition	287
Types of Verbs.....	287
There are three Verb Modes in German.....	287
Conjugation Basics	287
Summary	288
Task	288



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/verbsL1/>

DEFINITION

A verb is a word that expresses an action, a process, or a state.

Action / Process		State	
laufen	to walk	sein	to be
fahren	to drive	haben	to have
kaufen	to buy	stehen	to stand
wachsen	to grow	sitzen	to sit

The verb tells you if something happens in the past, the present, or the future.

Example: „Ich komme/kam/werde kommen.“ = I come/came/will come.

TYPES OF VERBS

Grammatically we distinguish between those six main groups of verbs:

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. Main Verbs | 4. Reflexive Verbs |
| 2. Auxiliary Verbs | 5. Compound Verbs |
| 3. Modal Verbs | 6. Participles |

THERE ARE THREE VERB MODES IN GERMAN

- Indicative (Indikativ)
- Imperative (Imperativ)
- Subjunctive (Konjunktiv)

Furthermore, an action can be passive or active.

CONJUGATION BASICS

Verbs need to be conjugated!!

→ **That means** you have to change the endings according to the person you are talking to/about.

German		English	
ich	gehe	I	go
du	gehst	you	go
er/sie/es	geht	he/she/it	goes
wir	gehen	we	go
ihr	geht	you	go
sie/Sie	gehen	they	go

Before you say, I'll never get it... Take a look at this:

German		English	
ich	bin	I	am
du	bist	you	are
er/sie/es	ist	he/she/it	is
wir	sind	we	are
ihr	seid	you	are
sie/Sie	sind	they	are

With certain verbs, you do the same in English. In German, you just have to do it with all of them.

SUMMARY

- Verbs express an action, a process, or a state.
- Verbs need to be conjugated.
- Verbs show the tense (future, present, past,...).
- There are different types of verbs.

TASK



Native Language Task:

- Check how you use verbs in your own language!
- Do you have to conjugate them?

VERBS L2 – THE VERB "SEIN" - TO BE

CONJUGATION OF "SEIN"

"Sein" = to be = The ONLY 100% irregular verb in German.

Person	Present Tense	Simple Past (Präteritum)
ich	bin	war
du	bist	warst
er/sie/es	ist	war
wir	sind	waren
ihr	seid	wart
sie/Sie	sind	waren
	Present Participle: seiend	Past Participle: gewesen

USE OF "SEIN"

1. We can use "sein" in combination with adjectives:

- „Du **bist** nett.“
- „Er **ist** arrogant.“
- „Ich **bin** schön.“
- „Wir **sind** schlau.“
- „Ihr **seid** witzig.“



2. We can use "sein" to identify things, people and animals (name, nationality, job, ...):

- „Das **ist** Sebastian.“
- „Leo **ist** ein Löwe.“
- „Ich **bin** Deutschlehrer.“
- „Achmed **ist** Syrer.“
- „Ida **ist** eine gute Schülerin.“

3. We can use “sein” to indicate age, date and time:

- „Sebastian **ist** 27 Jahre alt.”
- „Es **ist** schon 23 Uhr.”
- „Heute **ist** der 30. August.”
- „Das Baby **ist** erst ein paar Tage alt.”
- „Das Auto **ist** neu.”

4. We can use “sein” as an auxiliary verb to form the perfect tense:

- „Er **ist** nach Hause gekommen.“
- „Wir **sind** in den Urlaub gefahren.“
- „Das Auto **ist** repariert worden.“
- „Sie **sind** mit Freunden ins Kino gegangen.“
- „Holger **ist** nach Berlin gefahren.“

SUMMARY

- "Sein" is 100% irregular.
- We use it like in English:
 - ✓ in combination with adjectives
 - ✓ to identify things, people and animals
 - ✓ to indicate age, date, and time
 - ✓ as auxiliary verbs to form the perfect tense.

TASK



- Write down the conjugation of "sein" (or print it out) and put it in a place you regularly see until you know it by heart!
- Write down at least five sentences describing yourself:

For example:

„Ich bin 28 Jahre alt. Ich bin intelligent/lustig/...”

VERBS L3 – THE VERB "HABEN" - TO HAVE

CONJUGATION OF "HABEN"

"Haben" (= to have) is one of the very few irregular verbs in German. But you can see in the present tense only in the 2nd and 3rd person singular (like most non-regular verbs).

Person	Present Tense	Simple Past (Präteritum)
ich	habe	hatte
du	hast	hattest
er/sie/es	hat	hatte
wir	haben	hatten
ihr	habt	hattet
sie/Sie	haben	hatten
Present Participle: habend		Past Participle: gehabt

USE OF "HABEN"

1. We use "haben" to indicate possession:

- „Er **hat** ein Haus.“
- „Sie **hat** eine Puppe.“
- „Ich **habe** einen Fußball.“
- „Simon **hat** ein Fahrrad.“
- „Ayse **hat** einen Freund.“



2. We use "haben" in the case of a state referring to a noun:

- „Er **hat** Zeit.“
- „Sie **hat** lange Haare.“
- „Ich **habe** einen Bruder.“
- „Wir **haben** einen guten Lehrer.“
- „Ihr **habt** viel Spaß.“

3. Certain idioms with "haben" are:

- „Ich **habe** Recht.“
- „Ich **habe** dich lieb.“
- „Er **hat** es eilig.“

4. We use "haben" as an auxiliary verb to form some tenses:

- „Er **hat** gewonnen.“
- „Wir **haben** auf dich gewartet.“
- „Georg **hat** sich verliebt.“
- „Sie **hatten** mit Freunden eine Party gefeiert.“
- „Holger **hatte** sich ein neues Auto gekauft.“

SUMMARY

- "Haben" is irregular
- We use it like in English:
 - ✓ to indicate possession
 - ✓ to show that something is related to another noun
 - ✓ in specific phrases
 - ✓ as an auxiliary verb to form the perfect tense

TASK



- Write down the conjugation of "haben" (or print it out) and put it in a visible place until you know it by heart!
- Write down at least five sentences describing things that you have.

For example:

„Ich habe einen Bruder und zwei Schwestern. Ich habe braune Augen...“

VERBS L4 – STRONG VERBS

What are "STRONG Verbs"?	294
What do we have to change?	294
When do we change the Vowel?	294
What does the Vowel change to?	295
Summary	295



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/verbsL4/>

WHAT ARE "STRONG VERBS"?

German has just a handful of really irregular words like "sein" and "haben". But that doesn't mean that all the others are 100% regular!

Strong verbs change vowel when conjugated:

laufen → du **lä**ufst

sehen → du **sie**hst

geben → du **gi**bst



WHAT DO WE HAVE TO CHANGE?

Only the vowels "e" and "a" are going to be changed.

They almost always change if they are the second letter in the verb (excluding any prefix).

BUT: The vowels "i", "o" and "u" will never change!

- geben → du **gi**bst
- fahren → du **fä**hrst

THE ENDING DOES NOT CHANGE AT ALL!!!

WHEN DO WE CHANGE THE VOWEL?

The vowels "e" or "a" almost always change...

BUT only in the 2nd and 3rd person singular!

- geben: ich gebe
 du **gi**bst
 er / sie / es **gi**bt
 wir geben
 ihr gebt
 sie / Sie geben

WHAT DOES THE VOWEL CHANGE TO?

The vowel change is always from "e" to "ie" or "i" OR from "a" to "ä".

e → ie	e → i	a → ä
sehen	helfen	schlafen
ich sehe <u>e</u>	ich helfe <u>e</u>	ich schlafe <u>e</u>
du sieh <u>st</u>	du hilf <u>st</u>	du schlä <u>st</u>
er/sie/es sieh <u>t</u>	er/sie/es hilf <u>t</u>	er/sie/es schlä <u>t</u>
wir sehen <u>e</u>	wir helfe <u>n</u>	wir schlaf <u>e</u>
ihr seht <u></u>	ihr helft <u></u>	ihr schlaft <u></u>
sie/Sie sehen <u>e</u>	sie/Sie helfe <u>n</u>	sie/Sie schlaf <u>e</u>

SUMMARY

- "Strong Verbs" change the vowel when conjugated.
- They only change in the 2nd and 3rd person singular, and only "e" and "a" can change.
- There is no common rule, but a verb with "e" or "a" as the 2nd letter (excluding any prefix) will probably change.

VERBS L 5.1 – MODAL VERBS

WHAT ARE MODAL VERBS?

There are six modal verbs: "können", "wollen", "möchten", "sollen", "müssen", "dürfen" **modal verbs change the meaning of the sentence.** There is a difference between whether someone "must" do something or someone "can" do something.

Modal verbs are usually combined with a second verb ("main verb") and conjugated.

EXAMPLES

- „Ich **kann** kein Englisch sprechen.“
- „Ich **muss** heute nicht lernen.“
- „Ich **will** heute lernen.“
- „Wir **sollen** in die Schule gehen.“



WORD ORDER

Modal Verbs are usually combined with a second verb ("main verb") and must be conjugated.

The modal verbs are in position 1 (question/imperative) or position 2 (in regular main clauses). The main verb moves to the very end of the clause.

Position 1	Position 2		Main Verb - End
Er	kann	kein Englisch	sprechen.
Kann	er	kein Englisch	sprechen?

VERBS L 5.2 – THE DIFFERENT MODAL VERBS

Modal Verb “müssen”	298
Modal Verb “können”	299
Modal Verb “wollen/möchten”	300
Modal Verb “dürfen”	301
Modal Verb “sollen”.....	303
Summary: Modal Verbs	305



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/verbsL5-2/>

MODAL VERB "MÜSSEN"

Conjugation

	Present Tense	Simple Past (Präteritum)
ich	muss	musste
du	mus st	musstest
er/sie/es	muss	musste
wir	mü ssen	mussten
ihr	mü sst	musstet
sie/Sie	mü ssen	mussten

Use of "müssen"

1. We can use "müssen" as necessity:

- „Julia **muss** in die Schule **gehen**."
- „Der Fußballspieler **muss** hart **trainieren**."
- „Ich **muss** für meine Arbeit Deutsch **lernen**."
(There are no other possibilities.)

2. We can use "müssen" as a command or duty:

- „Du **musst** jetzt dein Zimmer **aufräumen**!"
- „Ihr **müsst** die Pizza **essen**!"
- „Sie **müssen** den Vertrag **unterschreiben**!"

3. We can use "müssen" as an assumption:

Very high probability that you are right.

- „Der Schal **müsste** Maria **gehören**."
(As an answer to: "Wem gehört dieser Schal?" → I am 99% sure that it belongs to Maria.)
- „Das Haus **muss** 30m hoch **sein**."
(As an answer to: "Wie hoch ist dieses Haus?" → I am almost 100% sure that it is 30 meters tall.)

MODAL VERB "KÖNNEN"

Conjugation

	Present Tense	Simple Past (Präteritum)
ich	kann	konnte
du	kannst	konntest
er/sie/es	kann	konnte
wir	können	konnten
ihr	könnt	konntet
sie/Sie	können	konnten

Use of "können"

1. We can use "können" as a permission or prohibition:

- „Du **kannst** hier nicht **parken**."
(It is forbidden.)
- „Unser Sohn **kann** heute Computer **spielen**."
(I allow him to do it.)

2. We can use "können" as a capability or inability

- „Du **kannst** schnell **rennen**."
- „Sie **kann** nicht gut **kochen**."
- „Ich **kann** Klavier **spielen**."
→ I do something well or not so well.

3. We can use "können" as a possibility or impossibility:

- „Du **kannst** nicht immer **gewinnen**."
- „Menschen **können** nicht **fliegen**."
- „Max **kann** mit meinem Auto **fahren**."
→ Something is possible or impossible

4. We can use “können” as a recommendation (often with the Konjunktiv 2):

- „Wir **könnten** heute ins Kino **gehen**!“
- „Ich **kann** dir **helfen**!“
- „Du **könntest** ihr ein Geschenk **kaufen**!“

5. We can use “können” as a polite request (with the Konjunktiv 2):

- „**Könntest** du mir bitte **helfen**?“
- „**Könnte** ich noch ein Bier **haben**?“
- „**Könnten** Sie mir einen Gefallen **tun**?“

6. We can use “können” as a guess (with the Konjunktiv 2):

There is a relatively small possibility that you are right.

A: „Wo ist deine Freundin?“

B: „Ich weiß es nicht. sie **könnte** bei einer Freundin **sein**.“

MODAL VERB “WOLLEN/MÖCHTEN”

Conjugation

	Present Tense		Simple Past (Präteritum)	
ich	will	möchte e	woll te	woll te
du	will st	möcht est	woll test	woll test
er/sie/es	will	möchte e	woll te	woll te
wir	woll en	möcht en	woll ten	woll ten
ihr	woll t	möcht et	woll tet	woll tet
sie/Sie	woll en	möcht en	woll ten	woll ten

* Actually "möchten" is the Konjunktiv 2 form of "mögen". But "mögen" isn't used as a modal verb anymore. Only the Konjunktiv 2 form is still used, namely as the polite version of "wollen". The real Konjunktiv 2 form of "wollen" is "wöllte". But usually, we replace it with the "würden" – version of the Konjunktiv 2.

Use of "wollen"

1. We can use "wollen" as a wish or an intention:

- „Ich **will** nach Deutschland **umziehen**!“
- „Sie **wollen** ein neues Auto **kaufen**!“

2. We can use "wollen" to refuse (with negation):

- „Ich **will** nicht in die Schule **gehen**!“
- „Jens **will** nicht nach Berlin **fahren**!“

3. We can use "wollen" as a main verb (with a subordinate clause):

- „Max **will**, dass ich das Geschirr abwasche.“
- „Ich **will**, dass du jetzt gehst.“

Difference between "wollen" and "möchten"

"Möchten" is the polite form of "wollen":

- „Papa, ich **will** ein Eis (essen)!“ - Very demanding
- „Papa, ich **möchte** ein Eis (essen).“ – Polite

MODAL VERB "DÜRFEN"

Conjugation

	Present Tense	Simple Past (Präteritum)
ich	darf	durfte
du	darfst	durftest
er/sie/es	darf	durfte
wir	dürfen	durften
ihr	dürft	durftet
sie/Sie	dürfen	durften

Use of "dürfen"

1. We can use "dürfen" as permission:

- „Wir **dürfen** eine Stunde Computer **spielen**."
(Dad allows us to do so.)
- „Er **darf** meinen Computer **benutzen**."
(I allow him to do so.)

2. We can use "dürfen" as a prohibition (with negation):

- „Wir **dürfen** heute nicht Computer **spielen**."
(Dad has not allowed it.)
- „Er **darf** meinen Computer nicht **benutzen**."
(I do not allow it).

3. We can use "dürfen" as a guess (with the Konjunktiv 2):

There is a high possibility that you are right.

- „Der Schal **dürfte** Maria **gehören**."
(As an answer to: To whom does this scarf belong? → I think/believe that it belongs to Maria.)
- „Das Haus **dürfte** 30m hoch **sein**."
(As an answer to: "How tall is this building?" → I think/believe/estimate it to be 30 meters tall!)

3. We can use "dürfen" to politely ask for permission:

- „**Darf** ich Sie etwas **fragen**?"
(Polite.)
- „**Dürfte** ich Sie etwas **fragen**?"
(Very polite!)

MODAL VERB "SOLLEN"

Conjugation

	Present Tense	Simple Past (Präteritum)
ich	soll	soll te
du	soll st	soll test
er/sie/es	soll	soll te
wir	soll en	soll ten
ihr	soll t	soll tet
sie/Sie	soll en	soll ten

Use of "sollen"

1. We can use "sollen" to describe a duty:

- „Ich **soll** das Geschirr **abwaschen**."
(I should wash the dishes. It is my job.)
- „Die Kinder **sollen** Hausaufgaben **machen**."
(The teacher gave the children a homework assignment.)

2. We can use "sollen" as a recommendation or advice (with the Konjunktiv 2):

- „Du **solltest** dein Zimmer besser **aufräumen**!"
(I recommend that you tidy up the room. Otherwise, your parents will be upset.)
- „Sie **sollten** den Vertrag **unterschreiben**!"
(I recommend that you sign the contract.)

3. We can use "sollen" as an assumption (always with the Konjunktiv 2):

There is a high probability that you are right.

- „Der Schal **sollte** Maria **gehören**."
(As an answer to: To whom does this scarf belong? → I am pretty sure that it belongs to Maria.)
- „Thomas **sollte** um 18 Uhr nach Hause **kommen**."
(As an answer to: Thomas should be home at what time? → I think that Thomas is coming home at 6 pm.)

4. We can use “sollen” as an indirect command:

→ Somebody else has given the order/command.

- „Du **sollst** den Müll **rausbringen**.”

(In this case, it is a "reminder" to do something finally. The command was previously issued and usually came from another person.)

In comparison, a direct command: “*Bring den Müll raus!*” (Imperative)

SUMMARY: MODAL VERBS

"Müssen" = must / have to:

- As a necessity
- As a command/duty
- As an assumption with a very high probability that you are right.

"können" = to can:

- As permission or prohibition
- As possibility or impossibility
- As capability or inability
- As an assumption with a very low probability that you are right.

"wollen / möchten" = to want:

- We use "wollen" to express a wish or intention.
- We can refuse things with the negation.
- "Möchten" is the polite form of "wollen".

"dürfen" = can:

- "Dürfen" = "can" and states whether something is allowed or forbidden.
- As an assumption with a very high probability that you are right.

"sollen" = to shall/should:

- "Sollen" is equal to the English word "should" and is used to express duties or indirect commands
- As an assumption with a relatively high probability that you are right.

VERBS L6 – COMPOUND VERBS

What are Compound Verbs?	307
Separable Prefixes.....	307
Inseparable Prefixes	308
Separable and Inseparable.....	308
Conjugation.....	309
When do you have to Separate?	309
Summary	310



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/verbsL6/>

WHAT ARE COMPOUND VERBS?

In German, we can create more verbs by adding prefixes to already existing verbs. **This changes the meaning of the verb.**

When conjugated, some verbs are separated from their prefix.

→ **Separable verbs.**

For other verbs, the verb and the prefix remain together even after conjugation.

→ **Inseparable verbs.**

The prefix determines to which of these groups a verb belongs to.

Simple Verb:

- „Ich **stehe** in der Küche.“

Separable Verb:

- „Ich **stehe** jeden Morgen um 6 Uhr auf.“

Inseparable Verb:

- „Ich verstehe dich nicht.“

SEPARABLE PREFIXES

The most important ones are: ab-, an-, auf-, aus-, ein-, gegen-, hoch-, los-, mit-, nach-, vor-, weg-, weiter-, zurück-, da-, hin-, her-, raus-, rein-, rüber-, runter-

Others are: auseinander-, bei-, empor-, entgegen-, entlang-, entzwei-, fern-, fest-, fort-, gegenüber-, heim-, hinterher-, nieder-, zu, zurecht-, zusammen-

- abfahren – „Ich **fahre** morgen ab.“
- aufstehen – „Du **stehst** um 6 Uhr auf.“
- rausgehen – „Ich **gehe** heute nicht raus.“
- mitkommen – „Ich **komme** zu dir mit.“

**Tip:**

Most separable prefixes can be used (in other situations) as a preposition or an adverb. The verb will probably be separable if you know the prefix as an independent word with an independent meaning.

INSEPARABLE PREFIXES

The most important ones: *be-, ent-, er-, ver-, zer-*

Others are: *miss-, fehl-, de(s)-, dis-, ge-, in-, re-*

- verstehen – „Du **verstehst** den Satz nicht.“
- bestehen – „Er **besteht** die Prüfung am Montag.“
- erfinden – „Ich **erfinde** etwas Neues.“
- entdecken – „Er **entdeckt** ein Geheimnis.“

SEPARABLE AND INSEPARABLE

For the prefixes *durch-, hinter-, über-, unter-, um-, wieder-* and *wider-*, the verb determines whether it is separable or inseparable.

- "durchqueren": not separable
„Ich **durchquere** den Tunnel.“
- "durchschneiden": separable
„Ich **schneide** das Band **durch**.“

Some words are both separable and inseparable.

In these cases, the meaning differs (This occurs very rarely).

- „Er **umfährt** das Schild.“ → He drives around the sign.
- „Er **fährt** das Schild **um**.“ → He drives into the sign.



Advice:

If the stress is on the 2nd syllable, the verb is not separable.

CONJUGATION

No matter which prefix is at the beginning or whether it is separable or inseparable, **the verb is conjugated just like the simple verb** (without prefix).

- „Ich **schlafe** immer sehr spät **ein**.“ - einschlafen
- „Er **steht** montags um 6 Uhr **auf**.“ - aufstehen

WHEN DO YOU HAVE TO SEPARATE?

You only have to separate a separable prefix if you conjugate the verb:

- „Ich **schlafe** immer sehr spät **ein**.“

(If you conjugate "einschlafen" → You have to separate it.)

You do not separate it if a modal or auxiliary verb is conjugated:

- „Ich **kann** nicht **einschlafen**.“

("Können" is conjugated, while the separable verb "einschlafen" is not ⇒ you do not separate "einschlafen".)

Inseparable Verbs:

- verstehen – „Du **verstehst** den Satz nicht.“
- bestehen – „Er **besteht** die Prüfung am Montag.“
- erfinden – „Ich **erfinde** etwas Neues.“
- entdecken – „Er **entdeckt** ein Geheimnis.“

No change! The verb is in the 2nd position! The conjugation remains the same!

SUMMARY

- In German, we can create more verbs by adding prefixes to already existing verbs. **This changes the meaning of the verb.**
- Depending on the prefix, the compound verb is either separable or inseparable.
- We disconnect separable prefixes only if the compound verb is in P2.
- The separated prefix goes to the very end of the sentence.
- The conjugation of the main verb does not change.

VERBS L7 – THE IMPERATIVE

The Use of the Imperative	312
Construction	312
Polite Form:.....	312
Plural "ihr":	312
Singular "du":	312
Imperative Construction of Separable Verbs	312
Irregularities	313
Exceptions.....	313
Word Order	313
Imperative of Separable Verbs	314



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/verbsL7/>

THE USE OF THE IMPERATIVE

We use the imperative for demands and commands.

Someone is personally talking to one or more people.

The imperative only exists in the "you" forms: du, ihr and the polite Sie.

Examples:

- „**Geh** jetzt ins Bett!" (Du – Form)
- „**Geht** bitte einkaufen!" (Ihr – Form)
- „**Gehen Sie** nach Hause!" (Sie – Form)

CONSTRUCTION

Polite Form:

In the polite form, we construct the imperative with **infinitive + Sie**.

- „**Gehen Sie** nach Hause!"

Plural "ihr":

In the plural form, we use the conjugated present tense of the verb (2nd person plural)

without the pronoun.

- „**Geht** (ihr) nach Hause!"

Singular "du":

In the singular form, we use the conjugated form (2nd person singular) **without the ending and drop the pronoun.**

- „**Geh**(st) (du) nach Hause!"

IMPERATIVE CONSTRUCTION OF SEPARABLE VERBS

Separable verbs are also separated in the imperative form.

The prefix goes to the end of the sentence.

- „**Kommen** Sie bitte **mit**!" – mitkommen
- „**Räumt** euer Zimmer **auf**!" – aufräumen
- „**Hol** deine Mutter **ab**!" – abholen

IRREGULARITIES

The **vowel change** in strong verbs **from "e" to "i/ie"** is also done in the imperative form.

The vowel change **from "a" to "ä"** is not.

- „**Hilf** deinem Bruder!" ("du hilfst")
- „**Fahr** langsamer!" ("du fährst")

Only in the du-form!

To sound more polite or speak more formally, we can add an "e" to the end of the verb.

- „Geh**(e)** nach Hause."

If the verb stem ends in "-d" / "-t" or "-m" / "-n", we **MUST** add an "e" to the end.

- „**Warte** noch 5 Minuten!"

Only in the du-form!

EXCEPTIONS

There are almost no irregular verbs in the imperative form. These are the only ones:

Infinitive	du	ihr	Sie
sein	Sei ruhig!	Seid ruhig!	Seien Sie ruhig!
haben	Hab keine Angst!	Habt keine Angst!	Haben Sie keine Angst!
werden	Werde besser!	Werdet besser!	Werden Sie besser!

WORD ORDER

The imperative form is always in position 1.

There is only one subject in the polite form ("Sie").

Position 1	
Geh	sofort nach Hause!
Geht	sofort nach Hause!
Gehen	Sie sofort nach Hause!

IMPERATIVE OF SEPARABLE VERBS

Separable verbs are also separated in the imperative form.

The prefix goes to the end of the sentence.

- „**Kommen** Sie bitte **mit**!“ – mitkommen
- „**Räumt** euer Zimmer **auf**!“ – aufräumen
- „**Hol** deine Mutter **ab**!“ – abholen

**ATTENTION**

The imperative is always very rude and unkind when spoken quickly and loudly.

The words "bitte" or "bitte mal" make the sentence sound more polite and friendlier.

„**Geh** bitte mal in den Supermarkt.“

„**Hol** mich bitte am Bahnhof **ab**.“

If you aren't mad at someone, you should always use "bitte" together with the imperative form. Without using "bitte", people will perceive it as rude and unkind.

If you want to express yourself even more politely, you should use the Konjunktiv 2 form:

- „**Würdest** du bitte mal in den Supermarkt **gehen**?“
- „**Würdest** du mich bitte am Bahnhof **abholen**?“

VERBS L8 – REFLEXIVE VERBS

What are Reflexive Verbs?	316
Reflexive Pronouns	316
True Reflexive Verbs	316
Partial Reflexive Verbs	317
Dative or Accusative?	317
Word Order	318
Summary	318



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/verbsL8/>

WHAT ARE REFLEXIVE VERBS?

Reflexive verbs require an additional **reflexive pronoun**, which takes the **accusative** or **dative** case. The reflexive pronoun is related to the subject of the sentence.



Ich	wasche	mich	jeden Tag.
Du	interessierst	dich	für Anna.
Subject	Verb	<u>Reflexive Pronoun</u>	Rest

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

Personal Pronouns	Reflexive Pronouns	
	Accusative	Dative
ich	mich	mir
du	dich	dir
er/sie/es	sich	sich
wir	uns	uns
Ihr	euch	euch
sie/Sie	sich	sich

TRUE REFLEXIVE VERBS

A true reflexive verb is always reflexive!

You can't replace or omit the reflexive pronoun.

You can't ask a question about the reflexive pronoun.

- „Ich **konzentriere** **mich** (auf den Unterricht).“

It is impossible to use "konzentrieren" without the reflexive pronoun.

In the dictionary, these words are marked in the following way:

- "s. konzentrieren", "sich konzentrieren", "konzentrieren (ref.)"

These words might not be reflexive in your own language, but the use of the reflexive pronoun in German is obligatory.

PARTIAL REFLEXIVE VERBS

You can ask a question about it.

Partial reflexive verbs can be used in a reflexive or non-reflexive way. It depends on the situation.

The verb can also refer to an object instead of the subject and is then not reflexive.

- „Ich **wasche** **mich**.“
(Reflexive since it refers to the subject)
- „Ich **wasche** die Wäsche.“
(It refers to the object "Wäsche" and not to the subject "ich" ⇒ It's not reflexive, so we don't use a reflexive pronoun.)

DATIVE OR ACCUSATIVE?

Reflexive Pronouns in Accusative

If there is only one object in the sentence,
use Accusative.

Example:

„Ich **wasche** **mich**.“

Reflexive Pronouns in Dative

If there are two objects in the sentence,
the Reflexive Pronoun takes the Dative
Case.

Example:

„Ich **wasche** **mir** **die Hände**.“

Exception: If the verb requires a certain case.

WORD ORDER

Main Sentence:

Position 1	Position 2	Position 3	
Ich	wasche	mich	heute Abend.

Question:

Position 1	Position 2	Position 3	
Wäschst	du	dich	heute Abend?

Subordinate Clause:

- "Ich **wasche mich** jetzt nicht,..." – main clause

Position 1	Position 2	Position 3	
..., weil	ich	mich	heute Abend waschen werde.

Only the verb goes to the end. The reflexive pronoun remains in position 3.

With Modal and Auxiliary Verbs:

Position 1	Position 2	Position 3	
Ich	kann	mich	heute Abend waschen.
Ich	habe	mich	gestern Abend gewaschen.

Only the main verb goes to the end. The reflexive pronoun is in position 3, after the modal verb or the auxiliary verb.

SUMMARY

- Reflexive verbs use reflexive pronouns.
- There are true and partial reflexive verbs.
- If there's more than one object (and no prepositions involved), the reflexive pronoun will be dative unless the verb requires a certain case.
- In general, the reflexive pronouns are in position 3.

VERBS L9 – THE VERB "WERDEN"

When do we use "werden"?	320
Use as a Main Verb	320
Use as a Auxiliary Verb.....	320
Conjugation.....	321
"worden" or "geworden"?	321



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/verbsL9/>

WHEN DO WE USE "WERDEN"?

The verb "werden" can be used in different situations:

werden + Noun	"Ich werde später <i>Polizist</i> ."
werden + Adjective	"Autos werden immer <i>schneller</i> ."
werden + Future	"Ich werde morgen ins Kino <i>gehen</i> ."
werden + Passive	"Das Auto wird morgen <i>repariert</i> ."
werden + Konjunktiv 2	"Ich würde das Haus gern <i>kaufen</i> ."

USE AS A MAIN VERB

1. We use "werden" together with a noun:

- „Ich **werde** später *Polizist*.“
- „Du **wirst** bestimmt ein Feuerwehrmann.“

(As a main verb, it means: "to develop into something")

2. We use "werden" with an adjective:

- „Autos **werden** immer *schneller*.“

(Guess or declaration of a **change in condition**)

USE AS A AUXILIARY VERB

Future: „Ich **werde** morgen zu dir kommen.“

Passive: „Der Kuchen **wird** gebacken.“

Konjunktiv 2: „Er **würde** gern Millionär sein.“

"Werden" is used in the construction but doesn't have any meaning of its own.

CONJUGATION

"werden" in the different tenses and in Konjunktiv 2:

	Präsens	Präteritum	Perfekt	Konjunktiv 2
ich	werde	wurde	bin	würde
du	wirst	wurdest	bist	würdest
er / sie / es	wird	wurde	ist	würde
wir	werden	wurden	sind	würden
ihr	werdet	wurdet	seid	würdet
sie / Sie	werden	wurden	sind	würden

"WORDEN" OR "GEWORDEN"?

geworden	worden
Active Werden as the main Verb Sein + Partizip 2 of werden „Ich bin gestern 30 geworden.“	Passive Werden with a 2nd verb sein + Partizip 2 of 2nd verb + "worden" „Der Kuchen ist gestern gebacken worden.“

VERBS L10 – THE VERB "LASSEN"

When do we use „lassen“?	323
Use as a Main Verb	323
Use as a Auxiliary Verb	323
Conjugation of “lassen”	325
“lassen” or “gelassen”	325
Word Order	326
Summary	326



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/verbsL10/>

WHEN DO WE USE "LASSEN"?

We can use the verb "lassen" **as a main verb and as a modal verb** (with a second verb in the infinitive form). **The meaning of "lassen" differs** depending on the use. "Sich lassen" in the third person is also an **alternative way of expressing the passive voice**.

USE AS A MAIN VERB

We use "lassen" in the meaning "to stop" or "to quit":

- „Ich **lasse** das Rauchen."
= I am quitting smoking. I don't smoke anymore.
- „**Lasst** Papa in Ruhe."
= Stop annoying Papa.

USE AS A AUXILIARY VERB

1. We use "lassen" in the meaning "not to bring, "not to change".

- „Ich **lasse** mein Auto in der Garage **stehen**."
= I am leaving my car at home in the garage.
- „Ich **lasse** mein Handy zu Hause **liegen**."
= I am not taking my mobile phone with me.

2. We use "lassen" in the meaning "to allow something":

- „Ich **lasse** meinen Sohn abends **fernsehen**."
= I allow my son to watch TV in the evening.
- „Er **lässt** seine Tochter mit dem Auto **fahren**."
= He lets his daughter use the car.

“Lassen” is used with verbs that describe a state, not an action:

- stehen, liegen, sitzen, ... (to stand, to lay, to sit, ...)



ATTENTION

We often drop the 2nd verb because it's obvious or commonly known. However, if you do so, you have to treat "lassen" like a main verb.

„Ich **lasse** mein Handy zu Hause.“

3. We use “lassen” in the meaning “something is possible/impossible”:

- „Pizza **lässt** sich ganz leicht selbst **machen**.“
= Pizza is easy to make yourself.
- „Der Fernseher **lässt** sich nicht **reparieren**.“
= It is not possible to repair the TV.

4. We use “lassen” in the meaning “to arrange for something to be done” (and not do it yourself):

- „Ich **lasse** mein Fahrrad **reparieren**.“
= I am having my bike repaired (by someone else).
- „Ich **lasse** mir eine Pizza **bringen**.“
= I will have a pizza brought to me.

5. When “lassen” is used as an auxiliary verb, it usually has a passive meaning:

- „Meine Freundin **lässt** sich die Haare **schneiden**.“
= „Die Haare (meiner Freundin) **werden geschnitten**.“
My girlfriend let her hair being cut vs. The hair of my girlfriend is being cut.

The difference is that the first sentence stresses that someone else is taking action (cutting her hair), while the second sentence refers to the action itself (the hair being cut).

More Examples – Passive Meaning:

- „Mein Vater **lässt** sich morgen **operieren**."
= My father has an operation tomorrow.
→ He has arranged it to be done.
- „Das Problem **lässt** sich einfach **lösen**."
= The problem can be easily solved.
→ It is possible to solve the problem easily.

CONJUGATION OF “LASSEN”

	Present	Simple Past	Perfect	
ich	lasse	ließ	habe	lassen / gelassen
du	lässt	ließt	hast	
er / sie / es	lässt	ließ	hat	
wir	lassen	ließen	haben	
ihr	lasst	ließt	habt	
sie / Sie	lassen	ließen	haben	

“LASSEN” OR “GELASSEN”

gelassen	lassen
“lassen” as the main verb haben + Partizip 2 of lassen „Ich habe mein Auto zu Hause gelassen.“	Passive “lassen” with a second verb haben + infinitive of 2nd Verb + “lassen” „Das Problem hat sich einfach lösen lassen.“

This is just like the standard rules for modal verbs.

WORD ORDER

Normal Sentence:

	Position 2		End
Mein Vater	lässt	sich morgen	operieren.

Question:

Position 1		End
Lässt	sich mein Vater morgen	operieren?

If "lassen" is the main verb, it is in position 1 or 2 in the main clause. However, if we use "lassen" as an auxiliary verb, we follow the rules of modal verbs.

"Lassen" is not a real modal verb because it has its own meaning and can be used without a second verb in the sentence. On the other hand, modal verbs always require a second verb and have no proper meaning by themselves!

SUMMARY

- "Lassen" has different meanings and can be used as an alternative passive form.
- It can be used as a main verb or as an auxiliary verb.
- When we use "lassen" as an auxiliary verb, we treat it like a modal verb.

VERBS L11 – THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE (Partizip 1)

What is the Present Participle?	328
The Construction	328
Use of the Partizip 1	328
Summary	329
Tip.....	329



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/verbsL11/>

WHAT IS THE PARTIZIP 1 (PRESENT PARTICIPLE)?

The Partizip 1 is also called Partizip Präsens (present participle). In English, it is the "-ing" version of the verb. But pay attention: German doesn't know a continuous mode/tense. (We use Präsens - simple present tense instead). Therefore, unlike in English, we only use it as an adjective that replaces a subordinate clause when describing that things happen simultaneously.

Examples:

- „Der **telefonierende** Mann fährt Auto.“
- „Die **laufende** Frau hört Musik.“
- „Der vor der Tür **stehende** Mann ruft nach dir.“

THE CONSTRUCTION

Infinitive + d

Infinitive	+d	Present Participle
schlafen	+d	schlafend
rennen	+d	rennend
fahren	+d	fahrend

The only exception: sein → seiend / tun → tuend

USE OF THE PARTIZIP 1

It can be used as an adjective instead of subordinate clauses when two actions occur simultaneously:

Version with Partizip 1:

- „Der **telefonierende** Mann bestellt ein Bier.“

Version without Partizip 1:

- „Der Mann, **der telefoniert**, bestellt ein Bier.“

SUMMARY

- Construction of the present participle: Infinitive + "-d".
- It is used as an adjective instead of subordinate clauses when two actions occur simultaneously.

TIP

Partizip 1 as an adjective: Something is happening at the same time.

- „Der **herunterfallende** Apfel ist grün.“
- „Der Apfel **fällt**.“ „Der Apfel ist grün.“

Partizip 2 as an adjective: Something has happened earlier on.

- „Der **heruntergefallene** Apfel ist grün.“
- „Der Apfel **ist heruntergefallen**.“ „Er ist grün.“

VERBS L12 – THE PAST PARTICIPLE (Partizip 2)

What is the Partizip 2 (Past Participle)?	331
Use of the Partizip 2	331
Regular Construction	331
Regular Verbs (Regular In Präsens)	331
Irregular/Strong Verbs (Irregular In Präsens)	332
Irregular Construction	332
Mixed Verbs	332
Verbs With Vowel Changes	332
Construction with Compund Verbs	333
Construction: Separable Verbs	333
Construction: Inseparable Verbs	333
Task	334



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/verbsL12/>

WHAT IS THE PARTIZIP 2 (PAST PARTICIPLE)?

The Partizip 2 is also called Partizip Perfekt and is equivalent to the English past participle. (It's the 3rd form of the verb)

i.e. go – went – **gone** // gehen – ging – **gegangen**

USE OF THE PARTIZIP 2

1. In Perfekt (Perfect), Plusquamperfekt (Past Perfect), Futur 2 (Future Perfect) and Passive:

Perfekt: „Du bist nach Hause **gegangen**.“

Plusquamperfekt: „Er war nach Hause **gegangen**.“

Futur 2: „Bis Morgen wird das Auto **repariert** sein.“

Zustandspassiv: „Das Fenster ist **geöffnet**.“

Vorgangspassiv: „Das Haus wird **geputzt**.“

2. As an adjective instead of a subordinate clause (if one action occurred before the other):

- „Er **parkt** jetzt das **geputzte** Auto.“
→ The first action was **putzen**.
→ The second action is **parken**.
„Er **hat** das Auto **geputzt**.“ „Er **parkt** das Auto jetzt.“

REGULAR CONSTRUCTION

Regular Verbs (Regular In Präsens)

ge + verb stem + **-(e)t**

Examples:

- machen → **gemacht**
- arbeiten → **gearbeitet** (when the verb stem ends in "-d" / "-t")

Feature:

Verbs ending in “-ieren” don't get “ge-” added to the beginning of the word.

- organisieren → organisiert

Irregular/Strong Verbs (Irregular in Präsens)

ge + verb stem + **-en**

Examples:

- fahren → **ge**fahren
- schlafen → **ge**schlafen

The categorization in regular and irregular is based on the Präsens conjugation!

Therefore, the construction of the Partizip 2 is regular for both versions.

IRREGULAR CONSTRUCTION

Mixed Verbs

For mixed verbs, the Partizip 2 uses the stem from the **Präteritum tense**:

ge + verb stem in Präteritum + **-t**

Examples:

- bringen → **ge**bracht (Präteritum: brachte)
- brennen → **ge**brannt (Präteritum: brannte)
- kennen → **ge**kannt (Präteritum: kannte)

There are no specific rules which verbs use the verb stem from the simple past. You just have to learn it.

Verbs With Vowel Changes

Some strong verbs change their vowel (a, e, i, o, u) to form their Partizip 2 form. These words usually change their vowel in the Präsens as well. Additionally, the double vowel "ei" almost always changes to "ie" in the Partizip 2.

Verbs with a vowel change always take an "-en" ending for the Partizip 2.

ge + verb stem with a vowel change + **-en**

Examples:

- helfen → geholfen
- nehmen → genommen
- schreiben → geschrieieben

CONSTRUCTION WITH COMPOUND VERBS

Construction: Separable Verbs

You simply add the prefix to the Partizip 2 of the main verb.

Prefix + **ge** + verb stem + **-t/-en**

Example:

- einschlafen → eingeschlafen
- aufräumen → aufgeräumt
- anbringen → angebracht

The Partizip 2 of the main verb remains the same!

Construction: Inseparable Verbs

Inseparable verbs form the Partizip 2 without the "ge".

Prefix + Verb stem + **-t/-en**

Examples:

- besuchen → besucht
- verstehen → verstanden

The Partizip 2 of the main verb remains the same!

Memorize: The basic form of the Partizip 2 always remains the same, independent of the prefix.

Example:

- stehen → gestanden (regular verb)
- aufstehen → auf**gestanden** (separable verb)
- verstehen → ver**standen** (inseparable verb)

TASK



- If you haven't done it yet, take my vocabulary list sample for verbs.
- Make a separate list just for verbs and fill in all the columns for every single verb you learn.
- If you learn the forms altogether, it is way easier! Then, when you start learning and using them, you'll quickly get a feeling for the correct conjugation!

VERBS L 13 – THE SUBJUNCTIVE 1 (Konjunktiv 1)

What is the Konjunktiv 1?	336
What is Indirect Speech?	336
Specific Expressions	336
Constructing the Konjunktiv 1	337
Good News	338
Tenses in Konjunktiv 1	338
Summary	338
Task	338



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/verbsL13/>

WHAT IS THE KONJUNKTIV 1?

The Konjunktiv 1 is a special form (also known as a mode) of a verb.

It shows that you aren't stating your own opinion, perception, question, or wish, but rather from something somebody else said. So, we use it for indirect and reported speech when we don't directly quote the other person.

It is mainly found in the news and the hospital. But there are also specific expressions that use the Konjunktiv 1.

WHAT IS INDIRECT SPEECH?

Direct Speech:

- Der Lehrer sagt: „*Deutsch ist nicht schwer!*“

Indirect Speech:

- Der Schüler sagt zu einem Freund: „*Mein Lehrer sagt, Deutsch **sei** nicht schwer.*“

→ The speaker is the teacher, and the student is reporting what the teacher said.

SPECIFIC EXPRESSIONS

The Konjunktiv 1 is also used for certain expressions:

- „Hoch **lebe** das Geburtstagskind!“
- „Gott **sei** dank!“
- „Es **lebe** die Freiheit.“
- „**Lebe** wohl!“

CONSTRUCTING THE KONJUNKTIV 1

Theoretically, there is a Konjunktiv 1 form for every verb. However, only "sein" is used with all grammatical persons (ich, du, er, etc.)

Singular	Konjunktiv 1	Plural	Konjunktiv 1
ich	sei	wir	seien
du	sei(e)st	ihr	seiet
er/sie/es/man	sei	sie	seien

For all other verbs, we usually only use the Konjunktiv 1 in the third person singular. To form it, we just have to take away the "n" from the infinitive form.

- Leben → "er **lebe**"
- Haben → "er **habe**"

In the second person (du/ihr), the Konjunktiv 1 is seldom used and is created by adding an "e" before the ending in the present tense (Präsens).

- Bringen → "du **bringest**" / "ihr **bringet**"
- Gehen → "du **gehest**" / "ihr **gehet**"

In informal speech, the Konjunktiv 2 (Subjunctive 2) is used instead.

In the first person singular (ich) and **first and third person plural** (wir/sie), the Konjunktiv 1 is **not used anymore**. Instead, the Konjunktiv 2 is used.

- Er sagt: „Wir gehen ins Kino."
 „Er sagt, sie **würden** ins Kino **gehen**." (= Konjunktiv 2)
 „Er sagt, sie **gingen** ins Kino." (= Konjunktiv 2)

GOOD NEWS

In informal speech, we don't really use the Konjunktiv 1.

Instead, we use the indicative and a subordinate clause containing "dass" (dass-Satz):

- „Der Lehrer sagt, *dass* Deutsch nicht schwer *ist*."

But the sentence is only 100% grammatically correct with the Konjunktiv 1.

TENSES IN KONJUNKTIV 1

The Konjunktiv 1 can be used in the Präsens (simple present), Perfekt (perfect) and Futur 1 (werden-future) tenses.

The conjugated verb needs to be in the Konjunktiv 1 form.

Tense	Konjunktiv 1
Präsens	"Er sage " / "Er fahre "
Perfekt	"Er habe gesagt" / "Er sei gefahren"
Futur 1	"Er werde sagen" / "Er werde fahren"

SUMMARY

- The Konjunktiv 1 is used for indirect speech or reported speech.
- It is rarely used in spoken language and replaced by the Konjunktiv 2 or Indikativ (indicative).
- The Konjunktiv 1 only exists in Präsens, Perfekt and Futur 1.

TASK



- Is there something similar in your language?
- Learn the Konjunktiv 1 version of "sein", and memorize how to form the Konjunktiv 1 in the 3rd person singular (er/sie/es).

VERBS L14.1 – THE SUBJUNCTIVE 2 (KONJUNKTIV 2)

What is the Konjunktiv 2?	340
Use of the Konjunktiv 2	340
Construction (Präsens - Present Tense)	340
The Most Important Verbs	341
Construction with "WÜRDEN"	341
Word order	342
Summary	342
Task	342



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/verbsL14-1/>

WHAT IS THE KONJUNKTIV 2?

The subjunctive is a special form of a verb. In German, it's called "Konjunktiv 2". The Konjunktiv 2 form describes assumptions or unreal things. It is mainly used to imagine or wish for something impossible to get or achieve right now.

In addition, we use the Konjunktiv 2 for polite questions and statements, recommendations, suggestions, and advice.

USE OF THE KONJUNKTIV 2

1. We use the Konjunktiv 2 for polite requests:

- „Ich **hätte** gern noch ein Bier.“
(= polite request/order in a restaurant.)
- „**Würdest** du bitte das Fenster zu **machen**? Mir ist kalt!“
(= polite question/request, asking if someone can/would do something.)

2. We use the Konjunktiv 2 for recommendations and suggestions:

- „Wir **könnten** heute Abend ins Kino **gehen**.“
(= Suggestion for what to do tonight)
- „Du **solltest** für deine Prüfung morgen **lernen**.“
(= Advice, recommendation)

3. We use the Konjunktiv 2 for wishes/dreams:

- „Ich **hätte** gern eine hübsche Freundin.“
(= wish)
- „Ich **wünschte** mir, ich **wäre** jetzt in der Karibik.“
(= dream)

CONSTRUCTION (PRÄSENS - PRESENT TENSE)

1. Put the verb in the Präteritum (= German simple past tense).
2. Change any "a", "o", "u" (that is the second letter in the verb) into: "ä", "ö", "ü".
3. Put an "e" at the end for 1st and 3rd person singular (if it isn't already there).

Präsens	Präteritum	Konjunktiv 2
ich bin	ich war	ich wä re
ich habe	ich hatte	ich h ätte

THE MOST IMPORTANT VERBS

	haben	sein	werden	können	sollen
ich	h ätte	w äre	w ürde	k önnte	so llte
du	h ättest	w är(e)st	w ürdest	k önntest	so lltest
er/sie/es	h ätte	w äre	w ürde	k önnte	so llte
wir	h ätten	w ären	w ürden	k önnten	so llten
ihr	h ättet	w är(e)t	w ürdet	k önntet	so lltet
sie/Sie	h ätten	w ären	w ürden	k önnten	so llten

"Sollen" is an exception, and the "o" doesn't change into "ö".

CONSTRUCTION WITH "WÜRDEN"

Usually, only the modal verbs, "sein", "haben" and "werden", get their own Konjunktiv 2 form.

We use the form "würden" (as an auxiliary verb) + infinitive form of the main verb for all other verbs.

→ „Ich **ginge** heute ins Kino.“ (rarely used)

→ „Ich **würde** heute ins Kino **gehen**.“

This second way to form the Konjunktiv 2 is the more common version and corresponds to the English "would" + verb. You could theoretically use this version with the modal verbs, "sein" and "haben", as well, but it isn't common and doesn't sound natural at all.

WORD ORDER

Normal Sentences:

	Position 2		End
Ich	würde	ins Kino	gehen.
Ich	ginge	ins Kino.	

Questions:

Position 1			End
Würde	ich	ins Kino	gehen?
Ginge	ich	ins Kino?	

SUMMARY

- The Konjunktiv 2 is used to be polite and express wishes.
- We form it by taking the simple past form, adding an "Umlaut", and adding an "-e" to the end (for 1st and 3rd person singular).
- Only "haben", "sein", "werden", and the modal verbs have their own form. For the rest, we use "würde" + infinitive.

TASK



- Write down some wishes and polite requests!
- Compare it to your own language! Do you also have a special form that is more polite?

VERBS L14.2 – B1 THE SUBJUNCTIVE 2 (KONJUNKTIV 2)

Comparison: Indikativ vs. Konjunktiv 2.....	344
Use of the Konjunktiv 2	344
Construction (Past)	345
Word Order	345
Summary.....	346



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/verbsL14-2/>

COMPARISON: INDIKATIV VS. KONJUNKTIV 2

The Indikativ (indicative) form describes the real world. → What is actually happening?

- „Ich **bin** ein Millionär.“

The Konjunktiv 2 describes the unreal world. → This world doesn't exist. It contains wishes and dreams.

- „Ich **wäre** so gern ein Millionär.“

USE OF THE KONJUNKTIV 2

1. We use Konjunktiv 2 for unreal conditions:

These are things that definitely or probably aren't happening, didn't happen, or wouldn't happen in the real world.

- „Auch wenn ich reich **wäre**, **würde** ich den Ring nicht **kaufen**.“
(= I am not rich. → unreal / unlikely)
- „Wenn du mehr Sport **gemacht hättest**, **wärst** du nicht so dick.“
(= In the past, so it cannot be changed. → unreal / not possible)

2. We use Konjunktiv 2 for wishes and dreams:

It shows the opposite of reality, and we often use it with the particles "bloß", "doch" and "nur".

- „Ach, wenn ich nur nicht so dick **wäre**!“
(= I can't get thin overnight. → unreal)
- „Ach, wenn ich doch keinen Alkohol **getrunken hätte**.“
(= A wish about something that has happened in the past. → unreal.)

3. We use Konjunktiv 2 for unreal comparisons:

These are comparisons to things that aren't real or true. The conjunctions that express this are: "als ob" and "als wenn."

- „Ich fühle mich, als ob ich krank **wäre**.“
(= In reality, I'm not sick. → not real)
- „Sie tut so, als ob sie mich nicht **kennen würde**.“
(She pretends not to know me, but she actually does know me. → not real)

CONSTRUCTION (PAST)

How do we form the Konjunktiv 2 form in the past?

1. Put the verb in Perfekt (perfect tense):

- „Ich **habe** das Spiel **gesehen**.“

2. Put the helping verb in Konjunktiv 2.

- „Ich **hätte** das Spiel **gesehen**.“

The Partizip 2 (past participle) remains the same.

Further Examples:

- „Ich **hätte** das Geschirr **abgewaschen**, wenn ich Zeit **gehabt hätte**.“
- „Du **wärst** nicht zu spät **gekommen**, wenn du eher **aufgestanden wärst**.“
- „Du **hättest** die Prüfung **bestanden**, wenn du mehr **gelernt hättest**.“

WORD ORDER

Main Clause	Subordinate Clause		
Sie würde dich heiraten ,	wenn	du viel Geld	hättest .

Everything is as usual if the main clause is in front of the subordinate clause: the conjugated verb in the main clause is in position 2, and the conjugated verb in the subordinate clause goes to the end.

Subordinate Clause			Main Clause	
<u>Wenn</u>	du viel Geld	hättest ,	würde	sie dich heiraten .
Hättest	du viel Geld,		würde	sie dich heiraten .

If the subordinate clause is in front of the main clause, we have two options. First, if we use the conjunction "wenn" everything is normal (The verb goes to the end of the subordinate clause and the verb in the main clause comes right after the comma).

Second, in spoken language, we use this second variation without "wenn". The verb goes to the first position. If the main clause is in front of the subordinate clause, we cannot omit "wenn".

The 2nd version is usually used in situations like this:

Anna: „Mama, ich bin durch die Deutschprüfung gefallen.“

Annas Mama: „**Hättest** du mal mehr **gelernt**.“

Anna's mom is saying that Anna should have studied for the test. We use this version if we want to say that someone should have done something different in the past (The main clause is omitted because it's obvious).

Why? It's shorter!

- „Wenn du mehr **gelernt hättest**, **wärst** du nicht durch die Deutschprüfung **gefallen**.“

SUMMARY

- We use the Konjunktiv 2 to be polite, to express wishes, and for everything that is UNREAL.
- To talk about the past, we only have the perfect tense (Perfekt). No Präteritum or Plusquamperfekt exists.
- If the subordinate clause is in front of the main clause, we can omit the conjunction "wenn" and start with the verb.

VERBS L15.1 – THE PASSIVE VOICE

What is the Passive Voice?	348
Comparison of Active & Passive	348
The Passive Voice in German	348
Task	349



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/verbsL15-1/>

WHAT IS THE PASSIVE VOICE?

The action itself is the most important in passive voice, answering the question "What is happening?"

The subject of the sentence is NOT performing the action. Instead, something is done to the subject. Therefore, the person or thing performing the action is not that important.

Examples:

- „Die Suppe **wird gekocht**."
- „Die Frau **wird fotografiert**."
- "Das Haus **wird gebaut**."

COMPARISON OF ACTIVE & PASSIVE

In active, the person who does something (the subject) is important:

- „**Frau Meier** kocht eine Suppe."

Question: **Who** is cooking the soup?

(The acting person is important: who is doing something.)

In passive, the action itself is important:

- "Die Suppe **wird gekocht**."

Question: **What** is happening?

(The action is important. Who is cooking the soup doesn't matter or is unknown.)

THE PASSIVE VOICE IN GERMAN

There are two types of passive voice:

1. **The Process Passive (Vorgangspassiv):** The action is important - what is happening or what has happened. The person who did it is unimportant or unknown.

2. **The Status Passive (Statuspassiv):** We describe the state after the action takes place.

I've also included an extra section on the so-called "impersonal passive". Technically, this is a type of Vorgangspassiv, but it often causes problems for students. That's why it has its own section.

TASK



Native Language Check

- Check how to form the passive in your native language!
- How does it work? Study it before you continue!

VERBS L15.2 – THE PROCESS PASSIVE (VORGANGSPASSIV)

What is the Process Passive?	351
Construction (Present Tense).....	351
Word Order	352
Verbs without Passive.....	352
Task	353



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/verbsL15-2/>

WHAT IS THE PROCESS PASSIVE?

- „Die Frau **wurde angefahren**.“
- „Ein Verband **wurde** der Frau **angelegt**.“
- „Die Frau **wurde** ins Krankenhaus **gebracht**.“

The most important information in these sentences are:

Someone was hit, a bandage was applied, the woman was taken to the hospital.

Those who hit her, who applied the bandage, and who took her to the hospital are either unimportant or unknown.

CONSTRUCTION (PRÄSENS)

Vorgangspassiv:

We form the Vorgangspassiv (process passive) with two parts:

“werden” + Partizip 2 (Past Participle)

- „Der Kuchen **wird** (vom Bäcker) **gebacken**.“

"Werden" is conjugated and the Partizip 2 is at the end of the sentence.

With Modal Verbs

We form the Vorgangspassiv + modal verbs with three parts:

modal verb + Partizip 2 + “werden”

- „Der Kuchen **muss gebacken werden**.“

The modal verb is conjugated, and we put "werden" after the Partizip 2 at the end of the sentence.

WORD ORDER

Normal Sentence:

	Position 2		End
Er	wird	ins Krankenhaus	gebracht.

Question:

Position 1			End
Wird	er	ins Krankenhaus	gebracht?

VERBS WITHOUT PASSIVE VOICE

1. Verbs without an accusative object can't use the passive voice:

a) Verbs that use the verb "sein" in Perfekt (perfect tense):

- „Ich **bin** (auf eine Party) **gegangen**."

Passive is not possible because I can only walk by myself.

→ Nobody can do it for me. → No passive possible

("auf eine Party" is additional, not grammatically necessary, information. Nothing with a preposition in front can be an accusative object.)

b) True reflexive verbs:

- „Ich **konzentriere mich**."

Passive isn't possible since the subject is being used for the action to take place. The subject is important.

→ Nobody can do it for me. → No passive is possible.

2. Verbs that don't describe an action (and instead only describe a condition) can't use the passive voice:

- i.e. "besitzen", "haben", "schlafen", "wissen", "kennen", ...

In passive, the action itself is important. However, these verbs describe a state or a condition, not an action.

If there is no action → no passive is possible.

TASK



Native Language Check

- Check if you can use the passive voice with all verbs in your own language!

VERBS L15.3 – THE PROCESS PASSIVE IN ALL TENSES

Overview	355
From Active to Passive	355
Simple Present Tense	355
Present Perfect Tense	355
Simple Past	356
Past Perfect	356
Future 1 (WERDEN – Future)	356
Future 2 (Perfect Future)	357



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/verbsL15-3/>

OVERVIEW

Tense	Passive Construction
Präsens (Simple Present)	"werden" + Partizip 2
Präteritum (Simple Past)	"wurden" + Partizip 2
Perfekt (Present Perfect)	"sein" + Partizip 2 + worden
Plusquamperfekt (Past Perfect)	"waren" + Partizip 2 + worden
Futur 1 (werden - Future)	"werden" + Partizip 2 + werden
Futur 2 (Perfect Future - rare)	"sein" + Partizip 2 + worden + sein

FROM ACTIVE TO PASSIVE

How to transform an active sentence into a (process) passive sentence:

1. The accusative object becomes the subject.
2. We remove or replace the subject with "von" + the noun in the dative case.
3. We conjugate the auxiliary verb "werden" and put the main verb in the Partizip 2 (past participle) form.

PRÄSENS (SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE)

Active:

- „Der Mann öffnet das Fenster.“
- „Die Frau liest das Buch.“

Passive: "werden" + Partizip 2 (past participle)

- „Das Fenster **wird** (vom Mann) **geöffnet**.“
- „Das Buch **wird** (von der Frau) **gelesen**.“

PERFEKT (PRESENT PERFECT TENSE)

Active:

- „Der Mann hat das Fenster geöffnet.“
- „Die Frau hat das Buch gelesen.“

Passive: "sein" + Partizip 2 (past participle) + worden

- „Das Fenster **ist** (vom Mann) **geöffnet worden**.“
- „Das Buch **ist** (von der Frau) **gelesen worden**.“

PRÄTERITUM (SIMPLE PAST)**Active:**

- „Der Mann öffnete das Fenster.“
- „Die Frau las das Buch.“

Passive: "wurden" + Partizip 2 (past participle)

- „Das Fenster **wurde** (vom Mann) **geöffnet**.“
- „Das Buch **wurde** (von der Frau) **gelesen**.“

PAST PERFECT**Active:**

- „Der Mann hatte das Fenster geöffnet.“
- „Die Frau hatte das Buch gelesen.“

Passive: "waren" + Partizip 2 (past participle) + worden

- „Das Fenster **war** (vom Mann) **geöffnet worden**.“
- „Das Buch **war** (von der Frau) **gelesen worden**.“

FUTUR 1 (WERDEN – FUTURE)**Active:**

- „Der Mann wird das Fenster öffnen.“
- „Die Frau wird das Buch lesen.“

Passive: "werden" + Partizip 2 (past participle) + werden

- „Das Fenster **wird** (vom Mann) **geöffnet werden**.“
- „Das Buch **wird** (von der Frau) **gelesen werden**.“

FUTUR 2 (PERFECT FUTURE)

Active:

- „Der Mann wird das Fenster geöffnet haben.“
- „Die Frau wird das Buch gelesen haben.“

Passive: "werden" + Partizip 2 (past participle) + worden + sein

- „Das Fenster **wird** (vom Mann) **geöffnet worden sein**.“
- „Das Buch **wird** (von der Frau) **gelesen worden sein**.“

VERBS L15.4 – THE IMPERSONAL PASSIVE

What is the Impersonal Passive?	359
Impersonal Passive with Dative Complements	359
Impersonal Passive with Prepositional Complements.....	360
The Pronoun "MAN"	360
"ES" with the Normal Passive Voice.....	360
Summary.....	361
Task	361



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/verbsL15-4/>

WHAT IS THE IMPERSONAL PASSIVE?

The impersonal passive is a special form of the **Vorgangspassiv** when we don't have an accusative object that can become the grammatical subject of the sentence.

In my previous lesson, you have learned that we can't create the passive if there is no accusative object. Well, with a small trick, we can:

- We take the pronoun "es" as a placeholder for the accusative object. The same also works with an adverbial phrase (when, how, where, or why something happened).
- The pronoun "es" or the adverbial phrase must be in position 1.
- A dative object remains a dative object in the passive voice, always. Therefore, only an accusative object can become the subject in the passive sentence.
- If we don't have an accusative object, we use the impersonal pronoun "es" as a placeholder for the subject.
- "Es" must be in position 1. "Es" can be omitted if you put the dative / prepositional complement in position 1 instead.

You can find sample sentences on the next page.

IMPERSONAL PASSIVE WITH DATIVE COMPLEMENTS

Active	Passive
Mein Sohn hilft mir .	Mir wird geholfen.
	Es wird mir geholfen.
Niemand hört dem Lehrer zu.	Dem Lehrer wird zugehört.
	Es wird dem Lehrer zugehört.

The conjugation is based on "es".

IMPERSONAL PASSIVE WITH PREPOSITIONAL COMPLEMENTS

Active	Passive
Der Mann wartet <u>auf mich</u> .	Auf mich wird gewartet.
	Es wird auf mich gewartet.
Er spielt <u>mit dem Kind</u> .	Mit dem Kind wird gespielt.
	Es wird mit dem Kind gespielt.

The conjugation is based on "es". If the noun has a preposition in front, it can't be an object. So although we have a noun in the accusative case here, it's not an accusative object.

THE PRONOUN "MAN"

The impersonal pronoun "man" does not exist in passive voice. Instead, it is left out or replaced with "es".

Active	Passive
In Italien isst <u>man</u> viel Pizza.	In Italien wird viel Pizza gegessen.
	Es wird viel Pizza in Italien gegessen.
<u>Man</u> raucht in Bayern wenig.	In Bayern wird wenig geraucht.
	Es wird in Bayern wenig geraucht.

"ES" WITH THE NORMAL PASSIVE VOICE

You can use the impersonal pronoun "es" in all passive sentences. Usually, we use it when the acting person cannot be or should not be named.

Active:

- „Die Polizei hat den Täter gefasst.“

Passive:

- „Der Täter wurde (von der Polizei) gefasst.“
- „Es wurde der Täter (von der Polizei) gefasst.“

SUMMARY

- The impersonal pronoun "es" is used if there is no accusative object.
- It is not obligatory! We can omit it, but the conjugation of the verb is always based on "es" if it is impersonal passive.
- In case you omit "es", there might be no subject in the sentence!

TASK**Native Language Check**

- How do you form the impersonal passive in your language?

VERBS L15.5 – THE STATUS PASSIVE (Zustandspassiv)

What is the Status Passive?	363
Construction Present	363
Status Passive with Modal Verbs	363
Word Order	364
Status Passive in all Tenses	364
Other Examples	364
Task	365



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/verbsL15-5/>

WHAT IS THE ZUSTANDSPASSIV?

The status passive focuses on the state after an action, i.e., the result of an action.

- „Die Frau hatte einen Unfall. Sie **ist verletzt**.“

During the action, the woman was injured.

→ Her current condition/status: She **is injured**.

→ Who hit the woman with the car does not matter or is unknown.

CONSTRUCTION PRESENT

	sein	Past Participle
ich	bin	geöffnet, geschlossen, verletzt, ...
du	bist	
er/sie/es	ist	
wir	sind	
ihr	seid	
sie/Sie	sind	

"Sein" is conjugated, and the Partizip 2 (past participle) moves to the end of the sentence.

STATUS PASSIVE WITH MODAL VERBS

The state passive with modal verbs is formed from three parts:

Modal verb + Partizip 2 (Past participle) + sein

- „Das Fenster **muss geöffnet sein**.“

The modal verb is conjugated, and "sein" moves behind the Partizip 2 at the end of the sentence.

WORD ORDER

Normal Sentence:

	Position 2		End
Das Fenster	ist	(weit)	geöffnet.

Question:

Position 1			End
Ist	das Fenster	(weit)	geöffnet?

STATUS PASSIVE IN ALL TENSES

Tense	Construction
Präsens	sein + Partizip 2
Vergangenheit	waren + Partizip 2
Futur	werden + Partizip 2 + sein

It is impossible to form the Zustandspassiv in other tenses.

OTHER EXAMPLES

Präsens (Present tense):

- „Der Mann **ist** schwer **verletzt.**“
- „Der Zaun **ist** frisch **gestrichen.**“

Vergangenheit (Past tense)

- „Der Mann **war** schwer **verletzt.**“
- „Der Zaun **war** frisch **gestrichen.**“

Futur 1: (werden-future)

- „Der Mann **wird** schwer **verletzt sein.**“
- „Der Zaun **wird** frisch **gestrichen sein.**“

TASK

**Native Language Check**

- How do you form the Zustandspassiv in your language?

VERBS L 16 – VERBS WITH COMPLEMENTS

BASIC INFO ABOUT COMPLEMENTS

Some conjugated verbs require complements for the sentence to be grammatically correct:

- Things that are required: **Complements**.
- Things that you can leave out: **Adjuncts**.

A complement is a part of the sentence that is grammatically required. The sentence is incomplete and does not make sense without it or has another meaning.

For example, every verb needs a subject. Therefore, the subject is always the nominative complement because the subject is grammatically required.

Only exception: commands do not always need subject complements: "Komm!"

Complements can be singular words, phrases, or entire clauses.

Complements are divided into the following groups:

1. **Nominative** Complements
2. **Accusative** Complements
3. **Dative** Complements
4. **Genitive** Complements (extremely rare)
5. **Prepositional** Complements

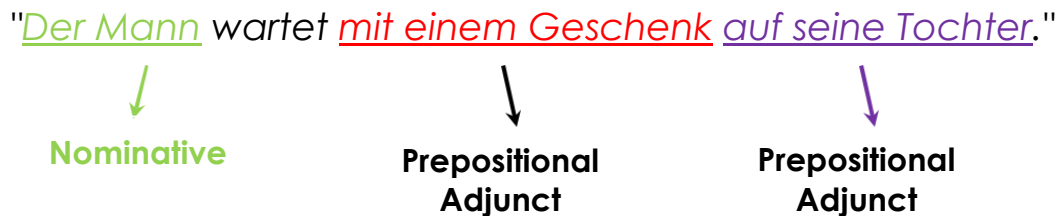


"Der Mann gibt dem Kind jetzt den Ball."

Nominative
Dative
 Adjunct
 Accusative

→ "Der Mann", "dem Kind" and "den Ball" are complements. Without them, the sentence does not make sense at all.

→ "Jetzt" is an adjunct because it just provides additional information.



→ "Der Mann" must be included in the sentence. Therefore, it is a complement.

→ "Mit einem Geschenk" and "auf seine Tochter" just provide additional information. You can simply omit them.



→ You can not drop anything. All parts are complement.

→ The verb „interessieren“ requires you to use the preposition „für“ at all times. It's a verb with a prepositional complement. You can find a list with all verbs with prepositional complements in my Ebooks: „40+ German Grammar lists“

You can find more information about complements in the following sub-lessons:

- L16.1 Verbs with Nominative Complements
- L16.2 Verbs with Accusative Complements
- L16.3 Verbs with Dative Complements
- L16.4. Verbs with Dative and Accusative Complements
- L16.5. Verbs with Genitive Complements
- L16.6. Verbs with Prepositional Complements

SUMMARY

- Complements are grammatically necessary parts of the sentence.
- Nevertheless, most of them can be omitted if it is obvious from the context.

TASK



- Review the cases if you are not sure about the use of nominative, accusative, dative, and genitive.

VERBS L16.1 – VERBS WITH NOMINATIVE COMPLEMENTS

Nominative Complements	370
Examples	370
Verbs with Two Nominative Complements.....	370
Sentences without Nominative	371
Summary	371



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/verbsL16-1/>

NOMINATIVE COMPLEMENTS

Verbs always require a noun in the nominative case.

The verb cannot stand alone and needs a subject. → The subject is, therefore, a nominative complement. The subject can be a person or a thing.

EXAMPLES

- „*Der Mann* geht mit ihr spazieren.“
"Der Mann" is the subject → **Nominative**
- „*Wir* sind mit dem Zug nach Berlin gefahren.“
"Wir" is the subject → **Nominative**
- „*Das Haus* steht direkt am Strand.“
"Das Haus" is the subject → **Nominative**

VERBS WITH TWO NOMINATIVE COMPLEMENTS

The verbs "sein", "werden", "bleiben" and "heißen" require a second nominative complement in addition to the subject:

- „*Der Mann* ist ein Idiot.“
- „*Mein Sohn* wird ein Pilot.“
- „*Er* bleibt ein Lehrer.“

When you use these verbs without a preposition, the corresponding object is always in the nominative form. Why? Both nouns/pronouns are referring to the same person.



ATTENTION

If they are followed by measurements (weight, length, time, ...), you have to use the accusative case! (The question is "how...?" → Not the same person. → No nominative)

"**Der Schrank** ist **einen Meter** hoch."

BUT: "**Der Schrank** ist **ein alter Schrank**."

"**Er** bleibt **einen Monat** im Krankenhaus."

"**Der Tisch** ist **einen Meter achtzig** lang."

SENTENCES WITHOUT NOMINATIVE

When we give commands (imperative), we don't need a nominative complement since we talk to the person we want to perform the action. (The subject is implied, just like in English):

- „**Komm** sofort nach Hause!" (Come home immediately!)

In impersonal passive, the subject could be unknown. In passive voice, the person who is performing the action is not important. → Therefore, it is possible to have a sentence without a subject and therefore without nominative (L15.4 Impersonal Passive).

- „Auf den Mann **wurde geschossen**."

SUMMARY

- In general, every verb needs a subject → Every verb has a nominative complement.
- Only the imperative and impersonal passive can be used without the nominative complement.

VERBS L16.2 – VERBS WITH ACCUSATIVE COMPLEMENTS

Accusative Complements.....	373
Examples	373
Word Order	373
Double Accusative Complements.....	374
Summary	375



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/verbsL16-2/>

ACCUSATIVE COMPLEMENTS

Most German verbs use an accusative complement (a.k.a. accusative object).

The accusative object can only be a person or a thing. Some verbs can have a double accusative complement, which means they have two accusative objects.

The accusative complement is the direct object.

EXAMPLES

- „*Der Mann* besucht *seine Eltern*.”

"*Seine Eltern*" is the accusative complement.

Without it, the sentence doesn't make sense.

Direct Object → *Accusative*

- „*Er* kennt *den Mann*.”

"*Den Mann*" is the accusative complement.

Without it, the sentence doesn't make sense.

Direct Object → *Accusative*

WORD ORDER

Normal Sentence:

Position 1	Position 2	Position 3
<i>Der Mann</i>	besucht	<i>seine Eltern</i> .
<i>Seine Eltern</i>	besucht	<i>der Mann</i> .

Yes / No – Question:

Position 1	Position 2	Position 3
Besucht	<i>der Mann</i>	<i>seine Eltern</i> ?

DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE COMPLEMENTS

The double accusative complement occurs seldom, and in my recommendation, you should always avoid it, if possible.

Five common verbs use double accusative complements:

"abfragen", "abhören", "lehren", "nennen", "kosten"

Examples:

- „*Mein Vater* fragt mich die Vokabeln ab.“

"*Mich*" and "*die Vokabeln*" are the two objects, and both are in the accusative case. Thus, grammatically, you can't omit either one without leaving a question unanswered.

Nevertheless, in informal language, the obvious part (in this case: "mich") is often omitted.

- „*Der Lehrer* lehrt uns die deutsche Sprache.“

"*Uns*" and "*die deutsche Sprache*" are the two objects, and both are in the accusative case.

In informal language, the obvious part (in this case: "uns") is often omitted.

- „*Der Apfel* kostet mich einen Euro.“

"*Mich*" and "*einen Euro*" are two accusative objects.

Usually, we will omit "mich" since it is obvious.

These verbs require a person and a thing as the accusative object. If the speaker himself is the person, we often omit the person because it is obvious about whom we are talking.

- „*Er* nennt mich einen Idioten.“

"*Mich*" and "*einen Idioten*" are two accusative objects.

We can't omit "mich" because it isn't obvious!

In informal language, we often use indirect speech (indirekte Rede - Konjunktiv 1):

„*Er* sagt, dass *ich ein Idiot* sei.“

SUMMARY

- Most verbs require an accusative complement.
- But there are also some without an object, a dative complement, a genitive complement, a prepositional complement, or (in rare cases) two accusative complements.

More about dative, genitive, and prepositional complements in the following lessons.

VERBS L16.3 – VERBS WITH DATIVE COMPLEMENTS

Dative Complements.....	377
Examples	377
Word Order	377
Summary	378
Task	378



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/verbsL16-3/>

DATIVE COMPLEMENTS

There are only a few verbs that use a dative suffix. When a verb has a dative complement, the direct object is in the dative case (not accusative). Only people, nouns, and pronouns can be dative complements.

EXAMPLES

- „Wem antwortet **sie**?" – „**Sie** antwortet **ihrem Vater**."
"ihrem Vater" → **"antworten"** has a dative complement → Even if it is the direct object; you have to use the dative case.



Advice:

You should memorize the verbs that use dative complements.
 There is no rule explaining all cases.
 Marking them with different colors will help you to memorize the cases.

„**Die Frau** hilft **dem Mann**."

„**Ich** glaube **meinem Vater**."

„**Die Hose** passt **mir** nicht."



ATTENTION

Prepositions can replace the dative complement and form a prepositional complement.

„**Sie** antwortet auf die Frage **ihres Vaters**."

WORD ORDER

Normal Sentence:

Position 1	Position 2	Position 3
Ich	glaube	meinem Vater.
Meinem Vater	glaube	ich.

Yes / No – Question:

Position 1	Position 2	Position 3
Glaube	ich	meinem Vater?

SUMMARY

- A few verbs have a dative complement.
- There is no rule as to which verbs require a dative suffix. You just must know it.
- These verbs require the dative case for the direct object, but prepositions always change the rules.
- If there is a preposition in front of a noun, it is no longer an object, and the following rule applies. → The preposition always determines the case.

TASK



- Copy them and mark them RED as a visual sign for the dative case. Doing so will help you memorizing this detail!

VERBS L16.4 – VERBS WITH DATIVE & ACCUSATIVE COMPLEMENTS

Dative & Accusative Complements.....	380
Word Order	381
Summary	382
Task	382



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/verbsL16-4/>

DATIVE & ACCUSATIVE COMPLEMENTS

In addition to a nominative complement, some verbs have a dative and an accusative complement as well.

These are above all verbs of giving, taking and saying. These verbs require three persons or things.

The subject is, as always, the **nominative complement**.

The **dative complement** is usually the receiver of the action. (indirect object)

The **accusative complement** is the third object. Usually, it is a thing. (direct object)

- „*Der Mann* gibt *dem Kind* *den Ball*.“

"*Der Mann*" is the acting person → **Nominative**.

The child is the receiver → **Dative** → "*dem Kind*."

The ball is the direct object, the object to which something is done.

→ **Accusative** → "*den Ball*".

- „*Er* schickt *seinem Bruder* *das Geschenk* *per Post*.“

"*Er*" is the acting person → **Nominative**

His brother is the receiver → **Dative** → "*seinem Bruder*"

The present is the direct object, the object to which something is done.

→ **Accusative** → "*das Geschenk*"

"*Per Post*" is an adjunct. It's additional information that could be omitted.

- „*Er* hat *(mir)* *eine E-Mail* geschrieben.“

"*Er*" is the acting person. → **Nominative**

I am the receiver. → **Dative** → "*mir*" (Personal pronoun in the dative case)

The email is the direct object to which something is done.

→ **Accusative** → "*eine E-Mail*"



ATTENTION

When the "receiver" is unknown or obvious, the dative complement can be omitted:

„*Er* hat (*mir*) eine E-Mail geschrieben.“

„*Er* schickt (*seinem Bruder*) das Geschenk per Post.“

WORD ORDER

Sentences with nouns (no pronouns):

Nominative + Verb + Dative + Accusative

Der Mann	gibt	seiner Tochter	das Buch.
----------	------	----------------	-----------

Sentences with one pronoun as the accusative or dative object:

Nominative + Verb + Pronoun + Accusative/Dative

Der Mann	gibt	ihr	das Buch.
Der Mann	gibt	es	seiner Tochter.

Sentences with two pronouns as the accusative and dative objects:

Nominative + Verb + Pronoun + Accusative/ Dative

Der Mann	gibt	es	ihr.
Er	gibt	es	ihr.

The nominative complement is usually in position 1.

You can put the dative or accusative pronoun in P1 as well but be careful! It can be pretty confusing, and I only recommend it if the dative or accusative complement isn't a pronoun.

SUMMARY

- Some verbs require a dative and an accusative complement.
- These verbs need three people or things to execute the action.
- The receiver is the indirect object and the dative complement.
- The object or person to which or to whom something is done is the direct object and the accusative complement.
- These rules only apply if we do not use prepositions.
- Prepositions always determine their own case.

TASK



Native Language Check:

- Check if the word order changes with or without pronouns in your own language.
- Do you put pronouns in front of other nouns as well?

VERBS L16.5 – VERBS WITH GENITIVE COMPLEMENTS

Genitive Complements	384
Nominative + Genitive	384
Nominative + Accusative + Genitive	384
Summary	385



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/verbsL16-5/>

GENITIVE COMPLEMENTS

There are only a few verbs that use genitive complements. Besides the obligatory **nominative complement** (subject), you usually have to add an **accusative complement** as well to use the genitive verbs in a grammatically correct way.

There is an easier version for almost all of these verbs: you simply have to add a preposition or use another verb with the same meaning.

The only verbs we actually have to use with the genitive are verbs used in court or by police, i.e., anklagen, bezichtigen, überführen, beschuldigen, verdächtigen.

NOMINATIVE + GENITIVE

Used to commemorate something or to become a master of something and can express a need:

- „Wir gedenken **der Toten**." (= Wir erinnern uns an die Toten.)
- „Wir bedürfen **der Hilfe**." (= Wir brauchen die Hilfe.)
- „Wir werden **der Situation** Herr." (= Wir werden die Situation unter Kontrolle bringen.)

NOMINATIVE + ACCUSATIVE + GENITIVE

Used to boast, to remember, to rejoice, to abstain, or to be ashamed of something

- „Ich erinnere mich **der alten Zeiten**." (= Ich erinnere mich an die alten Zeiten.)
- „Ich schäme mich **meiner schlechten Aussprache**." (= Ich schäme mich für meine schlechte Aussprache.)
- „Ich erfreue mich **des Lebens**!" (= Ich habe Spaß am Leben.)
- „Ich brüste mich **meiner Erfolge**." (= Ich gebe mit meinen Erfolgen an.)
- „Ich enthalte mich **der Stimmabgabe**." (= Ich gebe meine Stimme nicht ab.)

Used to accuse, convict, blame or suspect someone of something

- „Man klagt *ihn* **der Korruption** an.“ (= Der Staatsanwalt sagt, man hätte das getan.)
- „Man verdächtigt *ihn* **des Verbrechens**.“ (= Es gibt Beweise/Indizien, die darauf hindeuten.)
- „Man beschuldigt *ihn* **des Verrats**.“ (= Meistens hat man keine Beweise, sondern denkt es nur.)
- „Man bezichtigt *ihn* **der Straftat**.“ (= Meistens sind es falsche Anschuldigungen.)
- „Man überführt *ihn* **des Verbrechens**.“ (= Die Polizei weist ihm das Verbrechen nach.)

SUMMARY

- There is an easier version for almost all of these verbs. You simply have to add a preposition or use another verb with a similar meaning.
- This doesn't fit those verbs used in court or by the police (anklagen, verdächtigen, bezichtigen, beschuldigen, überführen).

VERBS L16.6 – VERBS WITH PREPOSITIONAL COMPLEMENTS

Prepositional Complements	387
Examples	387
Examples: Two Complements	387
Questions with Prepositions	388
Summary	389
Task	389



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/verbsL16-6/>

PREPOSITIONAL COMPLEMENTS

Some verbs require complements with prepositions. The verbs only have a specific meaning in combination with this preposition.

Without the preposition, the verb doesn't work or has a different meaning.

The preposition determines the case (dat./acc./gen.).

EXAMPLES

- „Ich *interessiere* mich *für* das neue iPhone.“
(The verb "sich interessieren" always uses the preposition "für". Without "für", the sentence is not correct.)
- „Ich *lasse* *auf* den Verkehr *auf*.“
(The verb "aufpassen" always uses the preposition "auf". Without "auf", the sentence is not correct.)

EXAMPLES: TWO COMPLEMENTS

Some verbs even require two complements with two different prepositions:

- „Ich *spreche* *mit* meiner Mutter *über* meinen Bruder.“
- „Er *bedankt* sich *bei* ihr *für* das Geburtstagsgeschenk.“

"Sprechen" and "bedanken" have two complements. However, if one of the two pieces of information is obvious or unknown, it can also be omitted. The prepositions determine the case.

QUESTIONS WITH PREPOSITIONS

When formulating questions with verbs that use a prepositional complement, keep a few things in mind. First, when asking for the complement with the preposition, we must also include the preposition in the question.

Questions About People

Accusative Preposition + "wen"

Auf	wen	warten wir?
An	wen	denkst du?

Dative Preposition + "wem"

Mit	wem	tanzt du?
Mit	wem	redet er?

We have to ask with the preposition in front of the question word. This is similar to the formal, old-fashioned version of English.

QUESTION ABOUT THINGS

The question word is formed by "wo" + preposition.

For prepositions that start with a vowel (a, e, i, o, u), we must include an "r".

These questions do not have anything to do with the single question "wo?" (Where?).

Wo (r) + Preposition

Wovon	träumst du?
Womit	machst du die Flasche auf?
Woran	denkst du?

Translation for direct comparison: For whom do we wait? Who are we waiting for? / About whom are you thinking? / With whom do you dance? / With whom is he you talking? // About what are you dreaming? With what do you open the bottle? / About what are you thinking?

This variation is possible, even though it is very informal:

Preposition + "was"		
An	was	denkst du?
Mit	was	machst du die Flasche auf?
Von	was	träumst du?

This variation is possible, even though it is very informal.

It is not so popular because it sounds a bit "dumb" or "uneducated".

SUMMARY

- Some verbs use complements with prepositions.
- That doesn't mean that the verb doesn't work without the preposition.
- Without the preposition or with another preposition, the verb has a different meaning.
- The preposition is obligatory for a certain meaning.
- The preposition determines the case, and for questions, the preposition must also be integrated into the question word (Like in the formal, old-fashioned English).

TASK



- **Use my Vocabulary List Sample for verbs.**
- Write down the meaning with and without prepositions while learning a new verb.

TENSES

TENSES L1 – The Präsens (Simple Present Tense)

Possible German Verb Endings	391
Present Tense – Conjugation Endings.....	391
Conjugation of “STRONG” Verbs in Present Tense	391
Conjugation: Irregular / Special Verbs	392
Special Features	393
Verb Stems Ending In "-d" or "-t".....	393
Verb Stems Ending In “s”, “ß”, “x”, or “z”	393
Verbs Ending In "-eln/-ern"	393
General Examples	394
Summary	394



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/tensesL1/>

POSSIBLE GERMAN VERB ENDINGS

All German verbs end in "-n" or "-en" in the infinitive form (basic form), all the irregular verbs as well. No exceptions!

- kaufenen
- rennenen
- gehenen
- habenen
- seinen
- essenen



... **NO EXCEPTIONS** ...

PRESENT TENSE – CONJUGATION ENDINGS

Person	Ending	Example	English
1st Person Singular (ich)	-e	ich spiele e	I play
2nd Person Singular (du)	-st	du spiel st	you play
3rd Person Singular (er/sie/es)	-t	er spiel t	he plays
1st Person Plural (wir)	-en	wir spiel en	we play
2nd Person Plural (ihr)	-t	ihr spiel t	you play
3rd Person Plural / Formal (sie/Sie)	-en	sie spiel en	they play

CONJUGATION OF "STRONG" VERBS IN PRESENT TENSE

What are "strong" verbs? We call a verb "strong" if there is a vowel change (a,e,i,o,u) when it's conjugated. Verbs without vowel changes (= the 100% regular ones) are called "weak" verbs.

When talking about "irregular verbs", I (and most teachers) do NOT include strong verbs because the endings are REGULAR. **The only irregularity is the vowel change.**

The vowel change only occurs in the 2nd and 3rd person singular and follows clear rules. All other forms are 100% regular.

The vowel change is always from "e" to "ie" or "i" OR from "a" to "ä".

The vowels "i", "o" and "u" will never change. Only "e" and "a" can change.

e → ei	e → i	a → ä
sehen	helfen	fahren
ich sehe <u>u</u>	ich helfe <u>u</u>	ich fahre <u>u</u>
du sieh <u>st</u>	du hilf <u>st</u>	du fähr <u>st</u>
er/sie/es sieh <u>t</u>	er/sie/es hilf <u>t</u>	er/sie/es fähr <u>t</u>
wir seh <u>e</u> n	wir helf <u>e</u> n	wir fahr <u>e</u> n
ihr seht <u>u</u>	ihr helft <u>u</u>	ihr fahrt <u>u</u>
sie/Sie seh <u>e</u> n	sie/Sie helf <u>e</u> n	sie/Sie fahr <u>e</u> n

This lesson is about the German present tense, the "Präsens" in general, focusing on regular verbs. However, if you are looking for a detailed explanation about strong verbs (the ones with vowel changes), check the lesson "Verbs L 4 - Strong Verbs."

CONJUGATION: IRREGULAR / SPECIAL VERBS

Unfortunately, some verbs do not adhere to any rule. But these verbs are rare in German.

For example: except "sein" (= to be), the plural of ALL verbs is 100% regular.

Three examples of irregular verbs:

sein	haben	werden
ich bin	ich habe	ich werde
du bist	du hast	du wirst
er/sie/es ist	er/sie/es hat	er/sie/es wird
wir sind	wir haben	wir werden
ihr seid	ihr habt	ihr werdet
sie/Sie sind	sie/Sie haben	sie/Sie werden

SPECIAL FEATURES

Verb Stems Ending In "-d" or "-t"

If the verb stem ends in "-d" or "-t", place an "e" before the endings "-st" and "-t".

arbeiten: "du arbeitest", "er arbeitet", "ihr arbeitet"

streiten: "du streitest", "er streitet", "ihr streitet"

Exception: vowel change (seldom)

- laden: "du lädest", "er lädet", "ihr ladet"
- halten: "du hältest", "er hältet", "ihr haltet"

Verb Stems Ending In "s", "ß", "x", or "z"

If the verb stem ends in "-s", "-ß", "-x" or "-z" omit the "s" from the ending in the 2nd person Singular.

heißen: "du heißt" (wrong: du heißst)

tanzen: "du tanzt" (wrong: du tanzst)

Verbs Ending In "-eln/-ern"

For the (rare) verbs that end in "-eln/-ern", ONLY the "n" is the ending, and therefore only the "n" must be omitted.

→ In the 1st and the 3rd person plural, we add only an "-n".

For verbs that end in "-eln", the "e" in front of the "l" is omitted in the 1st person singular.

Person	"-eln" - Ending	"-ern" - Ending
ich	samm <u>le</u>	wand <u>ere</u>
du	samm <u>elst</u>	wand <u>erst</u>
er/sie/es	samm <u>elt</u>	wand <u>ert</u>
wir	samm <u>eln</u>	wand <u>ern</u>
ihr	samm <u>elt</u>	wand <u>ert</u>
sie/Sie	samm <u>eln</u>	wand <u>ern</u>

GENERAL EXAMPLES

- „Ich gehe nach Hause.“
- „Du rennst sehr schnell.“
- „Er schreibt einen Brief.“
- „Sie kommt später.“
- „Es steht im Garten.“
- „Wir sehen dich morgen.“
- „Ihr streitet immer.“
- „Sie reden viel.“

SUMMARY

- All German verbs end in "-n" or "-en".
- We have to use the ending that corresponds to the person we are talking to/about.
- Some verb stems require an extra "e".
- We omit the "s" of "st" if the stem ends in "s", "ß", "x", or "z".
- If a verb ends in "-eln" or "-ern", the ending is only the "-n".

Tenses L2 – Use Of The Präsens (Present Tense)

USE OF THE PRÄSENS (SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE) IN GERMAN

For Something In The Present That Is A Fact Or A Condition:

- „Das **ist** Jan.“
 - „Er **sitzt** auf dem Sofa.“
- **Something is happening/valid/true right now.**

For An Action That Occurs Once, Often Or Never In The Present Time:

- „Jeden Sonntag **spielt** er Fußball.“
- „Am Donnerstag **arbeitet** er bis 18 Uhr.“
- „Montags **macht** er nie Sport.“

For Something That Is Always True:

- „Er **ist** Deutscher.“
- „Ich **komme** aus Deutschland.“
- „Sie **ist** Brasilianerin.“

So far, it's similar to English.

However, in German, the Present Tense is also used for:

For Actions That Took Place In The Past And Are Not Finished Yet:

- „Seit 10 Jahren **spielt** er Fußball.“
 - „Er **arbeitet** seit zwei Monaten bei Siemens.“
- **How long has something taken place?**

For Actions Taking Place In The Future That Are Planned Or Already Agreed To:

- „Morgen **gehe** ich ins Kino.“
- „Am Sonntag **hat** er ein wichtiges Spiel.“



- The time of the action must be known. It's used for actions that will take place for sure.
- In English, we sometimes use that form (i.e., "The plane leaves tomorrow at 2 pm."), but in German, we can use it whenever the time of the action is known. More about that in the lesson about the future 1 tense (Futur 1).

SUMMARY

We use the present tense for:

- Facts and conditions.
- Actions that occur once, often, or never in the present time.
- Something that is always true.
- Actions that took place in the past and are still happening now.
- Actions taking place in the future that are planned or already agreed to.

TENSES L3 – HOW TO EXPRESS THAT SOMETHING IS HAPPENING RIGHT NOW?

Add the word "gerade" after the conjugated verb!

- „Ich arbeite **gerade**.“
- „Wir lernen **gerade** Deutsch.“



To express the English present continuous (i.e., "am talking", "are riding", etc.), we use the Präsens (simple present tense) along with the adverb: "gerade". But only if we would like to highlight that something is happening right now.

GRAMMATICALLY, the simple present tense is enough!

For More Advanced learners (B2+): sein + (gerade) + "am" + nominalized verb

There is a present continues version in German. But it's only used if you wanna sound fancy.

- „Ich **bin** (gerade) **am Backen**.“
- „Ich **bin** (gerade) **am Deutschlernen**.“
- „Er **ist** (gerade) **am Aufräumen**.“

My recommendation:

Understand it, don't use it unless you reached B2 Level already or mastered nominalized verbs already. And keep in mind that this is fancy language. If you use it too much, you sound like a snob!

TENSES L4 – THE FUTURE 1 (WERDEN-FUTURE)

What is the Future 1?	399
Examples	399
Construction.....	399
Word Order	399
When do we use the Future Tense?	400
Future with Präsens (Simple Present Tense).....	400
Future with the Future Tense.....	400
Comparison	401
Task	401



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/tensesL4/>

WHAT IS THE FUTURE 1?

The future 1 is the tense used to express actions in the future.

EXAMPLES

The future tense with "werden" is also called the Future 1:

- „Wir **werden** ein neues Auto **kaufen**.“
- „Er **wird** wahrscheinlich nicht **kommen**.“
- „Ich **werde** nach Italien **fliegen**.“

CONSTRUCTION

We form the future tense together with the auxiliary verb "werden" (conjugated) + the infinitive form of the main verb:

	werden + Infinitive	
ich	werde	lernen.
du	wirst	
er/sie/es	wird	
wir	werden	
ihr	werdet	
sie/Sie	werden	

WORD ORDER

The regular word order with two verbs applies here:

Regular Main Clause:

	Position 2		End
Er	wird	mit dir	tanzen.

Yes / No Question:

Position 1			End
Wird	er	mit dir	tanzen?

WHEN DO WE USE THE FUTURE TENSE?

There are two ways to talk about the future:

1. Simple Present
+
Time Specification

2. The Future Tense

„Was **machst** du **morgen**?“

„Was **wirst** du morgen **machen**?“

FUTURE WITH PRÄSENS (SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE)

In German, the Präsens with a specification of time is often used to speak about the future. However, there is just one condition that needs to be fulfilled:

→ Something will happen more or less certain.

- „Wir **kaufen** **nächsten Monat** ein neues Auto.“

There must be a specification of time in the sentence, or the time, in general, must be known.

FUTURE WITH THE FUTUR 1 (THE FUTURE TENSE)

We use the actual future tense to express an intention, a prediction, or a guess.

You are not sure whether something will happen or not.

Theoretically, you can always use the Futur 1, but then you express some kind of uncertainty about whether it will occur not.

- „Er **wird** nächsten Monat (vielleicht) ein Auto **kaufen**.“

COMPARISON

- „Ich **werde** nach Italien **fliegen**."
(That is a plan or rather a wish. Probably you haven't booked the ticket yet.)
- „Ich **fliege** nächsten Monat nach Italien."
(That is a firm plan. It will happen for sure. You have most likely already booked the ticket.)

TASK



1. What do you think: Which form should be used to express a weather forecast?
2. Think about it and watch a TV weather forecast on N-TV, N24, or at the end of any other German-speaking news program.
3. Pay attention to how your German friends are talking about the future.

TENSES L5 – PERFEKT (German Perfect Tense)

The Different Tenses for the Past	403
Examples for the Perfekt	403
Construction.....	403
Construction with "sein"	404
Construction with "haben"	404
Word Order	405
Task	405



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/tensesL5/>

THE DIFFERENT TENSES FOR THE PAST

In German, we use two tenses to talk about the past: the Präteritum (simple past tense) and the Perfekt (perfect tense).

Present	Past	
Präsens (Present Tense)	Perfekt (Perfect tense)	Präteritum (Simple Past)
„Ich habe ein Auto.“	„Ich habe ein Auto gehabt .“	„Ich hatte ein Auto.“

We use the Perfekt for actions in the past that are already finished.

EXAMPLES FOR THE PERFEKT

- „Der Junge **hat** Fußball **gespielt**.“
- „Er **hat** Urlaub **gemacht**.“
- „Wir **sind** heute mit dem Zug **gefahren**.“

CONSTRUCTION

We form the Perfekt with "haben" or "sein" as an auxiliary verb and the Partizip 2 (past participle). Whether we have to use "haben" or "sein" depends on the main verb:

Person	Auxiliary Verb	Partizip 2	Auxiliary Verb	Partizip 2
ich	bin	gelaufen.	habe	gekocht.
du	bist		hast	
er/sie/es	ist		hat	
wir	sind		haben	
ihr	seid		habt	
sie/Sie	sind		haben	

Construction with "sein"

For movement or change of location (of the subject):

fahren → „Ich **bin** mit dem Bus *gefahren*.“

gehen → „Du **bist** nach Hause *gegangen*.“

There must be a movement **from point A to point B**.

„Du hast mit Martina getanzt.“ → No movement from A to B.

„Ich habe Marco zum Flughafen gefahren.“ → Subject (me) came back
→ No movement from A to B.

For a change of condition or status (of the subject):

sterben → „Er **ist** 1986 *gestorben*.“

= A change from **being alive** to **being dead**

einschlafen → „Du **bist** zeitig *eingeschlafen*.“

= A change from **awake** to **asleep**

The verbs "sein", "werden" and "bleiben" always use the auxiliary verb "sein":

„Ich **bin** in Deutschland *gewesen*.“

„Wir **sind** zu Hause *geblieben*.“

„Er **ist** ein Lehrer *geworden*.“

Construction with "haben"

We use it for all verbs that do not use "sein".

Furthermore, regardless of changes of state and location, ALL (true) reflexive verbs use the Perfekt with "haben".

- „Sie **hat** Essen *gekocht*.“
- „Er **hat** sich auf den Film *gefremt*.“
- „Max **hat** sich in Anna *verliebt*.“

WORD ORDER

The auxiliary verb is conjugated and is therefore in position 2. The Partizip 2 (past participle) is at the end of the sentence and remains unchanged.

Normal Main Clause:

	Position 2		End
Er	hat	Essen	gekocht.

Yes/No Question:

Position 1			End
Habt	ihr	den Mann	gesehen?

Subordinate Clause:

P1		End Main Clause	Subordinate Clause
Habt	ihr	gesehen,	wann er nach Hause gegangen ist?

TASK



- If you haven't done so yet, download my vocabulary list sample for verbs.
- Make a separate list just for verbs and fill in all the columns for every single verb you learn.
- If you learn the forms together, it gets way easier! You will quickly get a feeling for the correct conjugation!

Tenses L6 – The Simple Past Tense In German (Präteritum)

What is the Simple Past Tense (Präteritum)?	407
Conjugation: Regular Verbs	407
Special Characteristics:	407
Conjugation: Irregular Verbs	408



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/tensesL6/>

WHAT IS THE SIMPLE PAST TENSE (PRÄTERITUM)?

The simple past tense expresses facts about the past and actions that occurred in the past. In German, it's called the "Präteritum".

- „Das Wetter **war** schlecht.“
- „Er **machte** Urlaub.“
- „Wir **hatten** Glück.“

CONJUGATION: REGULAR VERBS

Person	kaufen	Ending
ich	kauf-	-te
du	kauf-	-test
er/sie/es/man	kauf-	-te
wir	kauf-	-ten
ihr	kauf-	-tet
sie/Sie	kauf-	-ten

Special Characteristics:

If the **verb stem** ends in **"-d" oder "-t"**, add **an "e"** in front of the ending

arbeiten: "ich arbeit**e**te",

"du arbeit**e**test",

"er arbeit**e**te" ...

CONJUGATION: IRREGULAR VERBS

For irregular verbs, there is a **vowel change**. Additionally, they often use the Präsens-ending (Simple Present ending) for the plural and no ending for the 1st and 3rd person singular.

Good News: 1st and 3rd person singular are ALWAYS identical for all verbs!

Irregular or not! No exceptions!

	sein	haben	schlafen
ich	war	hatte	schief
du	warst	hattest	schliefst
er/sie/es/man	war	hatte	schief
wir	waren	hatten	schliefen
ihr	wart	hattet	schlieft
sie/Sie	waren	hatten	schliefen

Bad News:

About 50% of all verbs are irregular!

Most Germans don't know the conjugations of all verbs in the simple past.

We try to avoid using them if possible.

Check out the next page for my guide on when to use Perfekt and Präteritum in modern spoken and written language.



TENSES L7 – Präteritum vs. Perfekt

Difference in Meaning	410
Difference in Use	410
Verbs using Präteritum (Simple Past) in Spoken Language ..	410
Excessive use of Präteritum	411
Summary	411



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/tensesL7/>

DIFFERENCE IN MEANING

THERE IS NO DIFFERENCE AT ALL!!!

- „Ich **bin** im Kino **gewesen**." = „Ich **war** im Kino."

Typical German mistake in English:

- „I wasn't in England yet." vs. „I haven't been to England yet."
wrong vs. correct

Same sentences in German:

- „Ich **war** noch nicht in England." = „Ich **bin** noch nicht in England **gewesen**."

No difference – both are correct!!!

DIFFERENCE IN USE

Präteritum (Simple Past)	Perfekt (Present Perfect)
• On the news • In newspapers, books, reports, and stories • In spoken language for the verbs: "sein", "haben", "werden" and modal verbs	• in conversation • In personal letters and emails, Facebook, YouTube, Twitter,

VERBS USING PRÄTERITUM (SIMPLE PAST) IN SPOKEN LANGUAGE

- sein, haben, werden
- können, sollen, wollen, dürfen, müssen

These verbs almost exclusively use Präteritum, even in spoken language. Why? Because they usually come with a second verb, and forming their Perfekt version can get long, complicated, and sometimes irregular. So, using Präteritum instead makes it easier for you!

- "Mixed Verbs" like brennen, kennen, denken, bringen, scheinen, ...

The Präteritum versions of these verbs are known because their Partizip 2 (past participle) is formed with the Präteritum stem of the verb. In northern parts of Germany, you will hear them in Präteritum, but if you go further south, you will also hear them in Perfekt.

Interesting fact: Swiss-German doesn't use the Präteritum. Swiss-German-speaking people always use the Perfekt.

EXCESSIVE USE OF PRÄTERITUM

AT BEST – You are immediately busted as a non-native speaker, even if you don't have an accent!

AT WORST – You sound like a snob or robot, and the people from southern Germany, Austria, and Switzerland may even have problems understanding what you are trying to say!

SUMMARY

- Don't use modal verbs in Perfekt; nobody does so! (outside Switzerland) The word order in subordinate clauses is irregular in Perfekt!
- Use the Präteritum (Simple Past) when writing official letters to the government, at work, and for complaints
- For everything else: USE THE PERFEKT!
- **When in doubt: USE PERFEKT!** (Even in the written language, the Perfekt is getting more and more accepted.)

TENSES L8 – THE PAST PERFECT (PLUSQUAMPERFEKT)

Basic Info	413
Examples	413
Overview	413
Construction.....	413
Use of the Past Perfect.....	414
Tip about Colloquial Language	414
Summary	414



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/tensesL8/>

BASIC INFO

In German, we call the past perfect "Plusquamperfekt" or "Vorvergangenheit".

We express that an action occurred before a specific point in time in the past.

We use the Plusquamperfekt in a narrative about the past whenever we look back on something that happened before the event we are talking about, just like in English.

EXAMPLES

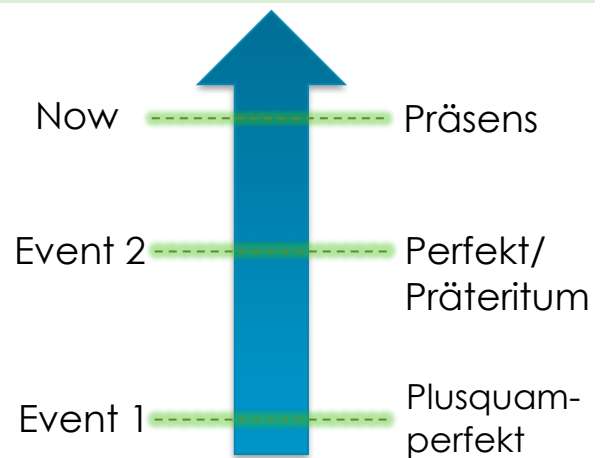
- „Beim Fußballturnier schoß Jan drei Tore." (simple past)
„Er **hatte** vorher viel **trainiert**." (past perfect)
- „Als er zu Hause ankam, (simple past) **hatte** sie schon **gegessen**." (past perfect)

OVERVIEW

„Ich traf mich mit meiner Freundin,

nachdem

ich die Hausaufgaben **gemacht hatte**."



CONSTRUCTION

Simple past (Präteritum) of "sein" or "haben" + past participle (Partizip 2):

Person	Auxiliary Verb	Partizip 2	Auxiliary Verb	Partizip 2
ich	war	gelaufen.	hatte	gekocht.
du	warst		hattest	
er/sie/es	war		hatte	
wir	waren		hatten	
ihr	wart		hattet	
sie/Sie	waren		hatten	

Use either "sein" and "haben" the same way you would use it for the perfect tense: movements from A to B, changes of status, and the verbs "sein", "werden", "bleiben" use "sein".

All other verbs use "haben" as an auxiliary verb.

USE OF THE PAST PERFECT

It's used most often in novels and written language. In colloquial language, we usually use it only after some signal words.

Signal words that indicate the plus perfect tense:

nachdem: „**Nachdem** er die Prüfung **bestanden hatte**, hat er gefeiert.“

bevor: „**Bevor** ich das Auto gekauft habe, **hatte** ich lange **gespart**.“

als: „**Als** ich ankam, **waren** alle schon **gegangen**.“

Tip about Colloquial Language

In colloquial language, native speakers often (incorrectly) replace the Plusquamperfekt with the Perfekt (present perfect) or Präteritum (simple past).

Correct: „Er hat das Rennen gewonnen. Er **hatte** vorher viel **trainiert**.“

But often: „Er hat das Rennen gewonnen. Er hat vorher viel trainiert.“

SUMMARY

- The German past perfect (Plusquamperfekt) is very similar to the English past perfect.
- However, there are no continuous or progressive versions ("-ing" versions)!
- In colloquial language, it's often replaced by the perfect tense (even though this is grammatically incorrect). You have to use it after: "Nachdem", "bevor" and "als" if the first action is already in the past!

TENSES L9 – THE FUTURE PERFECT (FUTUR 2)

What is the Future 2?	416
Examples	416
Use of the Future Perfect	416
Construction.....	417
Auxiliary Verb: SEIN or HABEN?	417
Word Order	418
Summary	418



Video Lesson:

<https://easy-deutsch.com/yt/tensesL9/>

WHAT IS THE FUTURE 2?

We use the "Futur 2" for assumptions about an action in the past or in the future.

We guess that the action already took place or will take place in the future, but we can't be sure about it.

EXAMPLES

- „Das Auto **wird** morgen **repariert sein**."
- „In einer Stunde **wird** er **angekommen sein**."
- „Du **wirst** die Prüfung **bestanden haben**."
- „Er **wird hingefallen sein**."

USE OF THE FUTURE PERFECT (FUTUR 2)

We use the Futur 2 for assumptions that an action will be completed in the future (always with a specification of time):

- „Das Auto **wird** morgen **repariert sein**."
- We are talking about a point in time in the future. At this time, the action will be completed.

It is used for assumptions about an action in the past:

- „Er **wird** wohl den Bus **verpasst haben**."
- The action must be completed at the time of speaking → werden + Perfekt.

CONSTRUCTION

	werden	Past Participle	sein/haben
ich	werde	angekommen bestanden repariert hingefallen	sein haben sein sein sein
du	wirst		
er/sie/es/man	wird		
wir	werden		
ihr	werdet		
sie/Sie	werden		

AUXILIARY VERB: "SEIN" OR "HABEN"?

The use of haben/sein is related to the use in the perfect tense (Perfekt):

- Condition or location change, as well as "sein", "werden" and "bleiben":
You have to use "sein" as the auxiliary verb.
- All other verbs and all reflexive verbs use "haben" as an auxiliary verb.

"Er **wird** in Berlin **angekommen sein**." (Location change)

**ATTENTION.**

For a condition, always use "sein".

The condition will change from the time of speaking to the point in time that is mentioned. → **Change in Condition** → "sein"

WORD ORDER

Normal Main Clause:

	Position 2		End	
Du	wirst	die Prüfung	bestanden	haben.

Question:

Position 1			End	
Wirst	du	die Prüfung	bestanden	haben?

SUMMARY

- We use the Futur 2 (future perfect tense) for assumptions about completed actions in the past OR future.
- It is formed with "werden" + Partizip 2 + "haben/sein".
- The verb "werden" must be conjugated.

FREE E-MAIL GRAMMAR LESSONS

**SUBSCRIBE NOW TO MY FREE GERMAN
GRAMMAR VIDEO LESSONS!**

Every Tuesday & Thursday you will improve
your German grammar with the help of:

- Video explanation
- PDF-Worksheet for every lesson
- Exercises to practice what you've
just learned



**SCAN THE QR-CODE OR TYPE THE FOLLOWING URL
INTO YOUR BROWSER:**

[HTTPS://EASY-DEUTSCH.COM/FREE-GERMAN-LESSON/](https://easy-deutsch.com/free-german-lesson/)

MOST EFFECTIVE TOGETHER

**DO YOU KNOW THAT I HAVE
PUBLISHED 10 EBOOKS ABOUT
GERMAN GRAMMAR?**

-